Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

Contents
A - Z

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

525i
530i
550i
525xi
530xi

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

BMW recommends Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

© 2006 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts,
only with the written consent of
BMW AG, Munich.
Order No. 01 41 0 012 828
US English VIII/06, 06 09 510
Printed in Germany
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

The fastest way to find specific topics is to use the index, refer to page 248.

Using this Owner's Manual
4 Notes
7 Reporting safety defects

At a glance
10 Cockpit
16 iDrive
22 Voice command system

Controls
28 Opening and closing
45 Adjusting
55 Transporting children safely
59 Driving
75 Everything under control
86 Technology for comfort, convenience and safety
103 Lamps
107 Climate
113 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips
126 Things to remember when driving

Navigation
134 Starting navigation system
135 Destination entry
147 Destination guidance
156 What to do if ...

Entertainment
160 On/off and tone
164 Radio
173 CD player and CD changer
179 External audio device

Communications
182 Telephoning
196 BMW Assist

Mobility
206 Refueling
208 Wheels and tires
216 Under the hood
220 Maintenance
222 Replacing components
231 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference
238 Technical data
243 Short commands of voice command system
248 Everything from A to Z

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have made every effort to ensure that you are able to find what you need in this Owner's Manual as quickly as possible. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be glad to advise you at any time.

You can find information on BMW, e.g. on technology, on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional extras, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice command system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice command system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The individual vehicle

When purchasing your BMW, you have decided in favor of a model with individualized equipment and features. This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment available with a specific BMW model.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible that the features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. Therefore, have corresponding work on your BMW performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.
When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.
BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.
BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.
BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation or its occupants.
Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.
Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information.◀

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

California Proposition 65 Warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.
Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following applies only to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call 1-800-333-0510 toll-free from anywhere in Canada or 1-613-993-9851 from the Ottawa region and from other countries, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville, Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa, ON, K1A 0N5. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

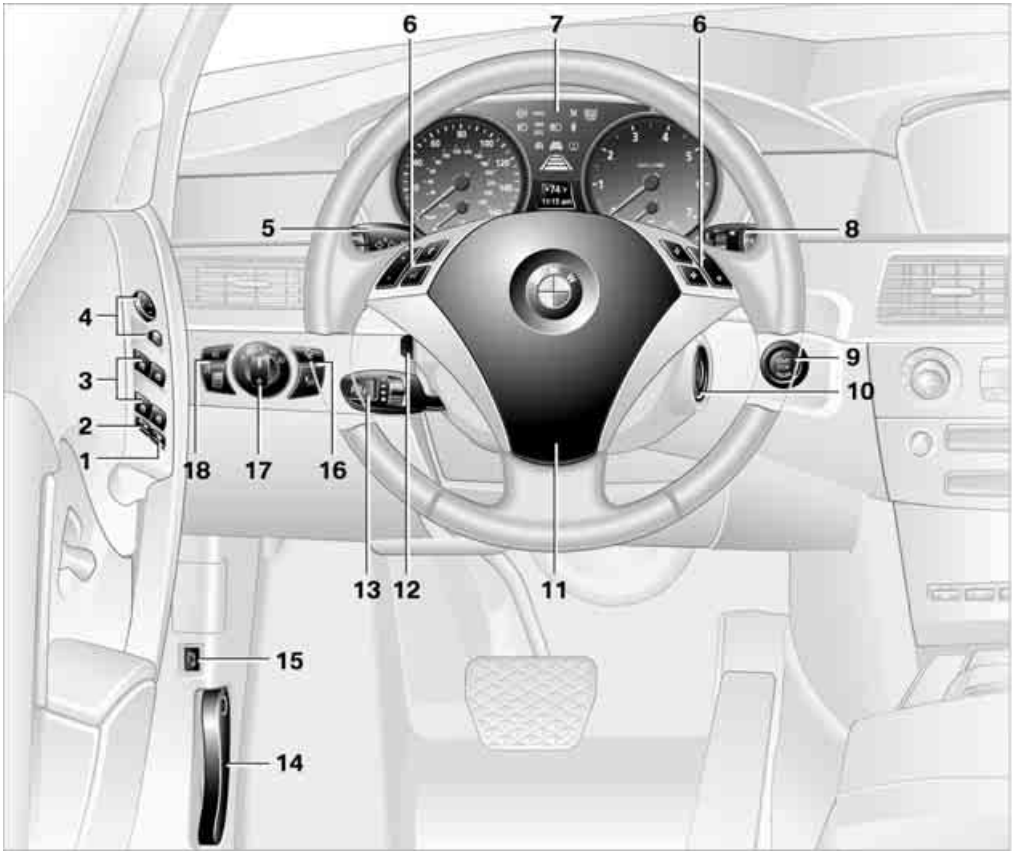
At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment. The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



1 Sedan: sun blind* for rear window 114

2 Rear window safety switch 41

3 Opening and closing windows 40

4 Adjusting exterior mirrors 52
Automatic curb monitor* 52

5
- Turn signals 65
- High beams, headlamp flasher 105
- Roadside parking lamps 105
- CHECK Check Control 80
- BC Computer 76

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

6 Buttons on steering wheel

Mobile phone* 182:

- ▷ Press: accepting and ending call, starting dialing* for selected phone number and redialing if no phone number is selected
- ▷ Press longer: redialing

Volume

Activating/deactivating voice command system* 22

Changing radio station 164
Selecting music track 174
Scrolling in phone book and in lists with stored phone numbers

Individually programmable* 53

Individually programmable 53

7 Instrument cluster 12

8 Windshield wipers 66

Rain sensor 66

Sports Wagon: rear window wiper 67

9 START STOP ENGINE Starting/stopping engine and switching ignition on/off 59

10 Ignition lock 59

11 Horn, entire surface

12 Steering wheel heater* 53

Steering wheel adjustment 53

13 Cruise control* 68

Active cruise control* 69

14 Releasing hood 216

15 Opening luggage compartment lid/ tailgate 35, 34

16 Head-Up Display* 98

BMW Night Vision* 100

17 Parking lamps 103

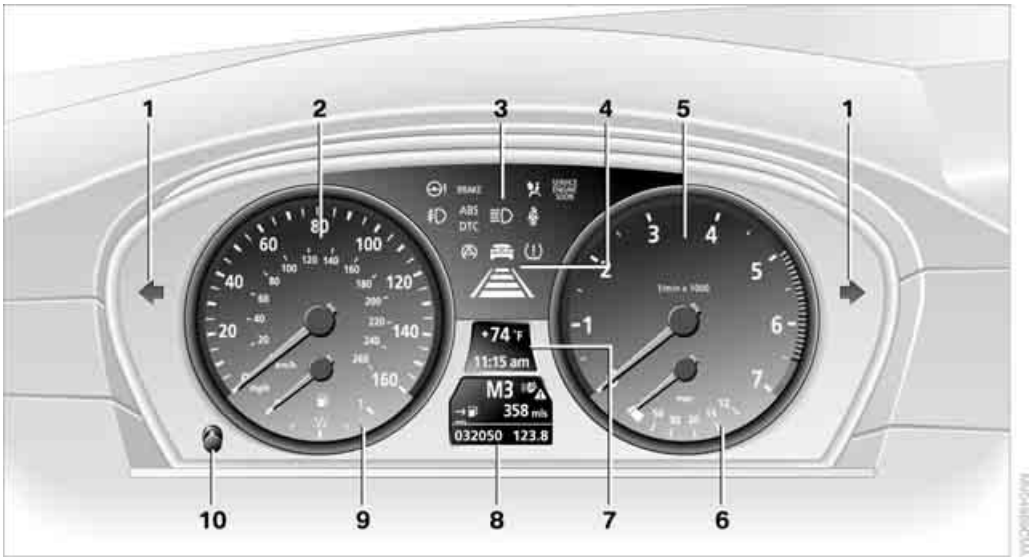
Low beams 103
Daytime running lamps* 104
Automatic headlamp control* 103
Daytime running lamps* 104
Adaptive Head Light* 104

18 Instrument lighting 105

Fog lamps* 105

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Instrument cluster



1 Indicator lamps for turn signals
2 Speedometer
3 Indicator and warning lamps 13
4 Displays for active cruise control* 72
5 Tachometer 75
6 Energy Control 76
7 Display for
  - ▷ Clock/date 75
  - ▷ Outside temperature 75
  - ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 80
  - ▷ Speed of cruise control* 68
  - ▷ Desired speed for active cruise control* 69
8 Display for
  - ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 75
  - ▷ Computer 76
  - ▷ Date and remaining travel distance for service requirements 78
  - ▷ Automatic transmission with Steptronic* 64
  - ▷ SMG Sequential Manual Transmission* 62
  - ▷ HDC Hill Descent Control* 89
  - ▷ ⚠ Check Control message present 80
9 Fuel gauge 76
10 Resetting trip odometer 75

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Indicator and warning lamps

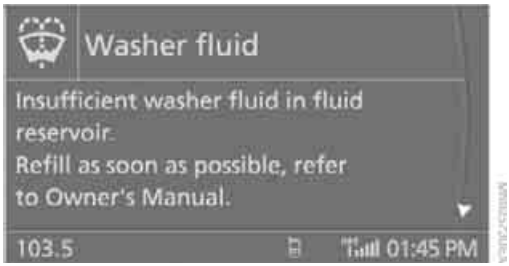
The concept

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

Some lamps are tested for proper function by briefly lighting up during starting of the engine or when the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.



Additional information, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on the corresponding need to take action can be displayed via the Check Control, refer to page 80.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

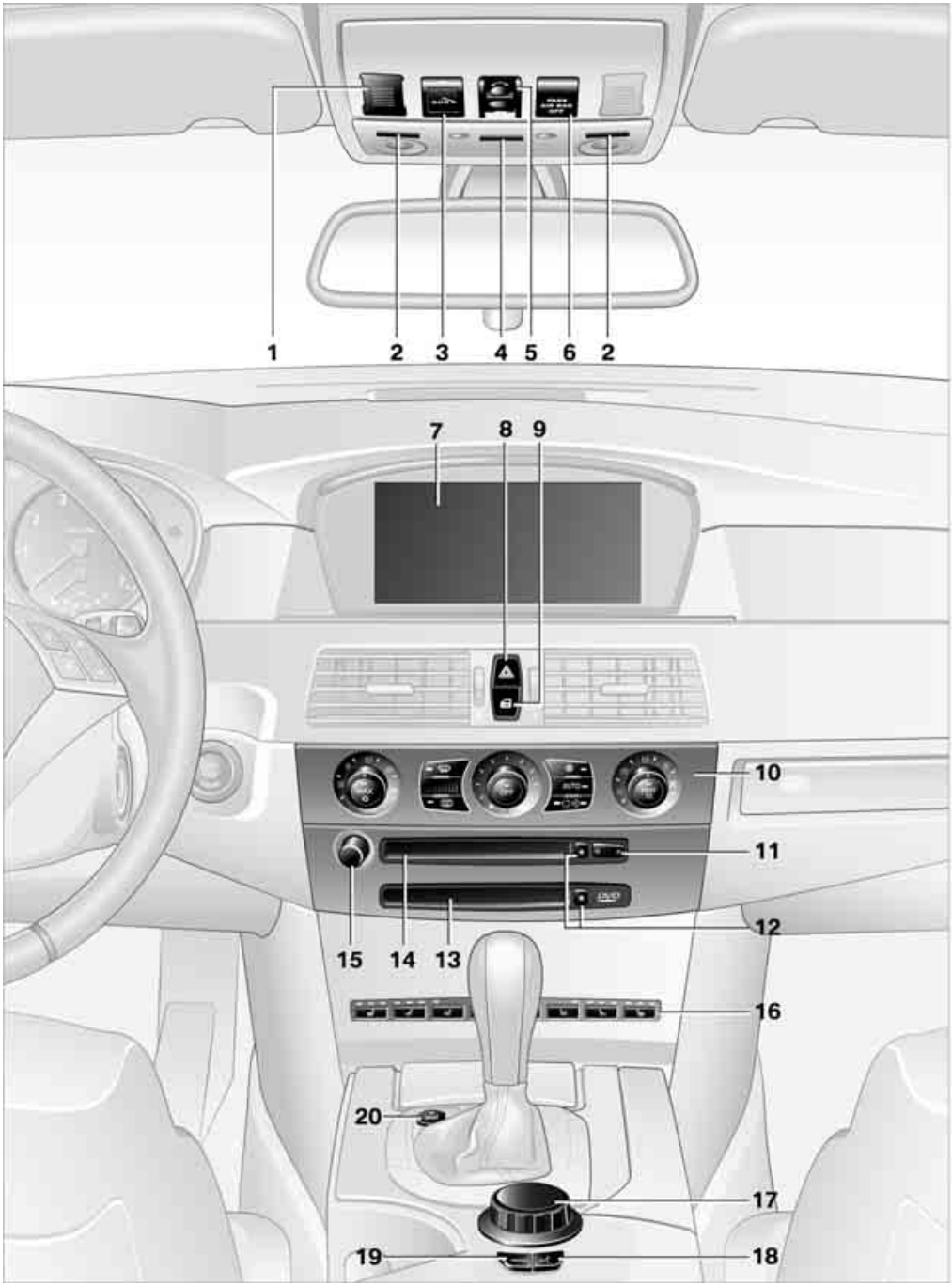
Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps indicate that the associated functions are activated:

BRAKE	Handbrake applied 61
(!)	Handbrake applied for Canadian models
≠D	Fog lamps* 105
DTC	DTC Dynamic Traction Control 88
≡D	High beams/headlamp flasher 105
⚠	Lamp flashes: DSC or DTC controls the drive and braking forces for maintaining vehicle stability 88

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Around the center console: controls and displays



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1 Microphone for hands-free mode for telephone*
and for voice command system* 22

2 Reading lamps 106

3 SOS: initiating an emergency call 231

4 Interior lamps 105

5 Glass sunroof*, electric 41
Panorama glass sunroof 43

6 Passenger airbag status lamp 97

7 Control Display 16
Displays for menu navigation

8 Hazard warning flashers

9 Central locking system 33

10 Automatic climate control 107

TEMP Temperature setting, left/right 108

AUTO Automatic air distribution and volume 108

Cooling function 109

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 110

Recirculated-air mode 110

MAX Maximum cooling 109

REST Residual heat mode 110

OFF Switching off automatic climate control 110

Air volume 109

Defrosting windows and removing condensation 109

Rear window defroster 107

11 Changing
- ▷ radio station 160
- ▷ track 160

12 Ejecting
- ▷ navigation DVD* 134
- ▷ audio CD 160

13 Drive for navigation DVDs* 134

14 Drive for audio CDs 160

15 Switching Entertainment sound output on/off and adjusting volume 160

16

Heated seats* 50

Active seat ventilation* 51

Adjusting active backrest width* 47

Active seat* 51

PDC Park Distance Control* 86

DTC DTC Dynamic Traction Control 88

17 Controller 16
Turn, press or move horizontally in four directions

18 Activating voice command system* 22

19 Opening start menu on Control Display 17

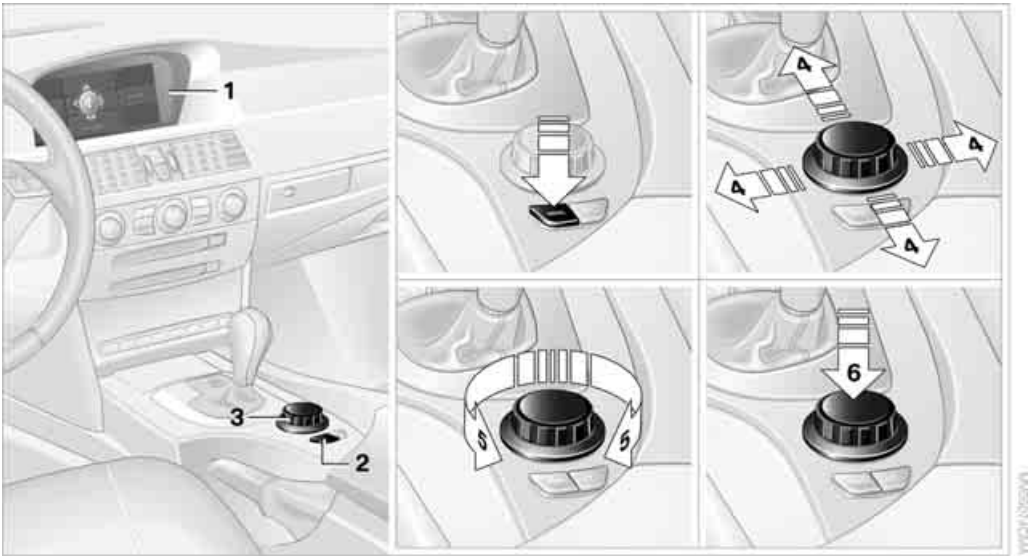
20 Dynamic Driving Control* 63

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

iDrive

iDrive combines the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

Controls



1 Control Display

2 **MENU** button
Opening start menu

3 Controller
With the controller you can select menu items and make settings:

- ▷ move in four directions, arrows **4**
- ▷ turn, arrow **5**
- ▷ press, arrow **6**

⚠ To avoid posing an unnecessary hazard due to inattention, both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users: never attempt to use the controls or make entries unless traffic and road conditions allow.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Menu overview

Communication

- ▷ Telephone*
- ▷ BMW Assist* or TeleService*

Navigation or onboard information

- ▷ Navigation system*
- ▷ Onboard information, e.g. for displaying the average fuel consumption

Entertainment

- ▷ Radio
- ▷ CD player and CD changer*
- ▷ External audio device

Climate

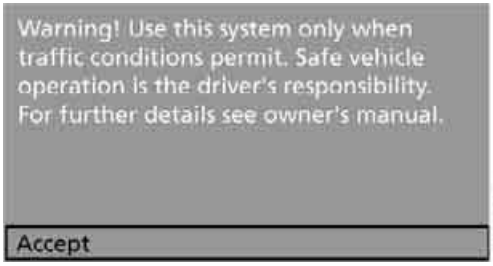
- ▷ Vent settings
- ▷ Automatic programs
- ▷ Seat heater distribution*
- ▷ Parked car operation*

i menu

- ▷ Switching off Control Display
- ▷ Tone and display settings
- ▷ Settings for your vehicle, e.g. for the central locking system
- ▷ Display of maintenance intervals and deadlines for legally mandated inspections
- ▷ Settings for telephone

Operating principle

From radio readiness, refer to page 59, the following message is shown on the Control Display:



To hide the message:
Press the controller.
This displays the start menu.

The message is automatically hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Start menu

You can call up all the functions of iDrive using five menu items.

Opening start menu

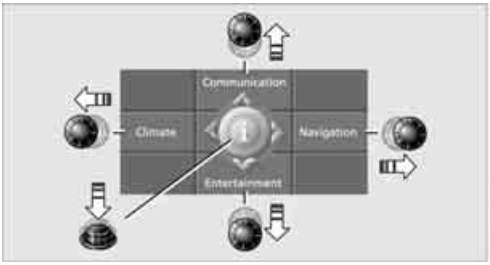
Press the **MENU** button.

To open the start menu from the i menu:

Press the **MENU** button twice.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Opening menu items of start menu



With the start menu you can open the menu items Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate by moving the controller to the left, right, front or rear.

You can open the i menu by pressing the controller.

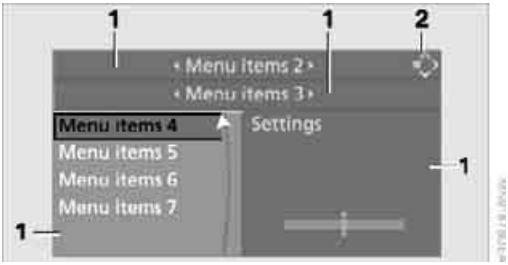
Comfort opening of menu items

Comfort opening offers you:

- ▷ Opening of a menu item of the start menu in the last display shown
- ▷ Direct changing between Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate without pressing the **MENU** button

For this purpose, move the controller in the corresponding direction and hold it for longer than approx. 2 seconds.

Displays in menu



1 Each menu is divided into fields.
The respective active field is highlighted.

2 A symbol indicates the last selected menu item of the start menu:

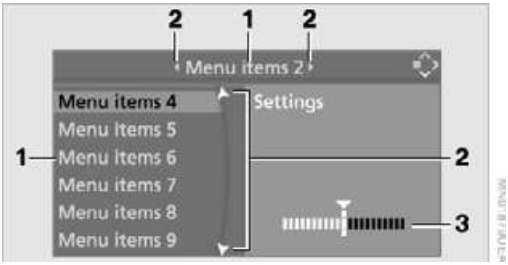
Communication

Navigation or onboard information

Entertainment

Climate

i menu



1 Menu items are usually grouped in horizontal or vertical lists.

2 In these lists, arrows indicate the possibility of accessing other menu items that are not currently visible.

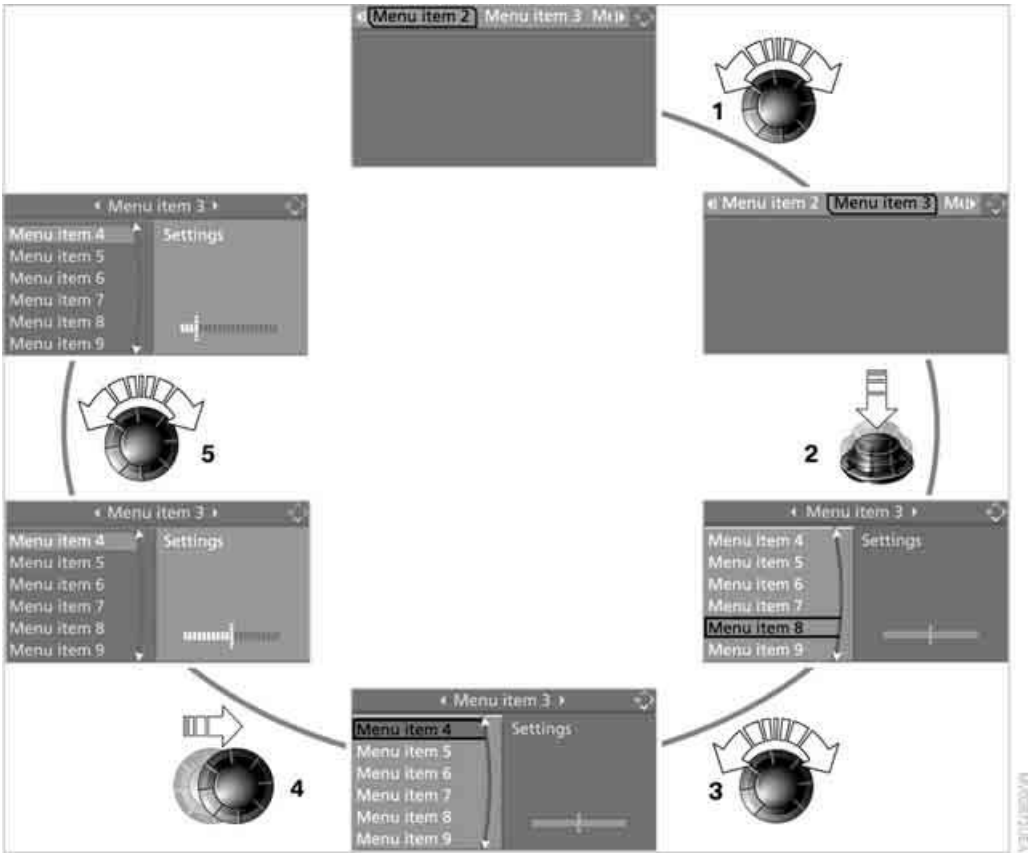
3 Settings are displayed graphically or numerically.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Operating principle at a glance

Basic operation via iDrive is described in this view.

You can view the individual steps under Settings on Control Display, Setting time, refer to page 83.



1 Selecting menu item:
- ▷ Turn the controller; the highlight moves
- ▷ Menu items shown in white can be selected by highlighting

2 Activating menu item:
- ▷ Press the controller
- ▷ New menu items are displayed or the function is carried out

3 Selecting menu item: refer to 1

4 Changing between fields:
- ▷ Briefly move the controller left, right, forward or back
- ▷ Release controller
- ▷ Active field appears lighter

5 Adjusting settings:
- ▷ Turn controller
- ▷ Graphic display, numerical value or text displays can be changed
- ▷ Confirmation by changing field

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Status information

1 Display for:
   - ▷ Entertainment:
     Radio, CD
   - ▷ Telephone* in "Communication":
     Name of linked mobile phone, network search or no network
   - ▷ "BMW Assist"*:
     Existing voice connection with a service from BMW Assist
2 Entertainment sound output off
3 Display for traffic information*:
   "TI":
   Traffic information for the navigation system can be received and transmission is switched on
4 Display for:
   - ▷ New entries present in "Missed calls"*
   - ▷ Roaming active
5 Telephoning* possible if the mobile phone is logged-on in the vehicle
   Mobile phone network with strong reception, display dependent on mobile phone
6 Time

Other displays:
The status information is temporarily hidden when there are Check Control instructions or inputs via the voice command system*.

Assistance window*

Additional information can be displayed in the assistance window:

- ▷ The computer or the trip computer*
- ▷ The arrow or map view with a navigation system*
- ▷ The current position

Selecting display

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Switching assistance window off/on

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.
2. Select "Assist. window off" and press the controller.

To switch on, change to the assistance window and press the controller.

Switching Control Display off/on

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Display off" and press the controller.

To switch on, press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Voice command system*

The concept

The voice command system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without ever removing your hands from the steering wheel.

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. This frees you of having to use the controller.

The voice command system transforms your oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

The voice command system uses a special microphone located in the area of the interior rearview mirror, refer to page 14.

Precondition

Via iDrive, set the language that applies for the voice command system in order to enable identification of the spoken commands. To set the language of iDrive, refer to page 85.

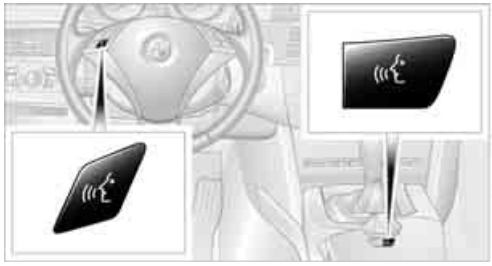
Symbols in Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice command system.

Voice commands

Activating voice command system

1. Press the button.



This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal tell you that the voice command system can respond to commands.

2. Say the command.
   The command is displayed on the Control Display.

This symbol is shown on the Control Display when you can input additional commands.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

If no other commands are possible, then operate the equipment via iDrive.

Terminating or canceling voice command system

Press the button on the steering wheel or in the center console
or

›Cancel‹

Commands

Having possible commands read aloud

You can have the system read aloud the possible commands related to the selected menu item on the Control Display.
To have the system list the possible commands:

›Options‹

For example, if you have selected "CD", the system will read aloud the possible commands for operating the CD player and the CD changer*.

Opening help

›Help‹

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Radio on‹ or ›Turn radio on‹

Running functions directly with short commands

With short commands you can carry out certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected, refer to page 243.

Opening start menu

›Main menu‹

Example: selecting a track

1. Switch on Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel or in the center console.
3. ›Entertainment‹
   The system says:
   ››Entertainment‹‹

4. ›CD‹
   The system says:
   ››CD on‹‹

5. Press the button on the steering wheel or in the center console.
6. Select track, e.g.:
   ›Track 1‹
   The system says:
   ››Track 1‹‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Notes

The mobile phone can also be operated with voice commands, refer to page 191.◀

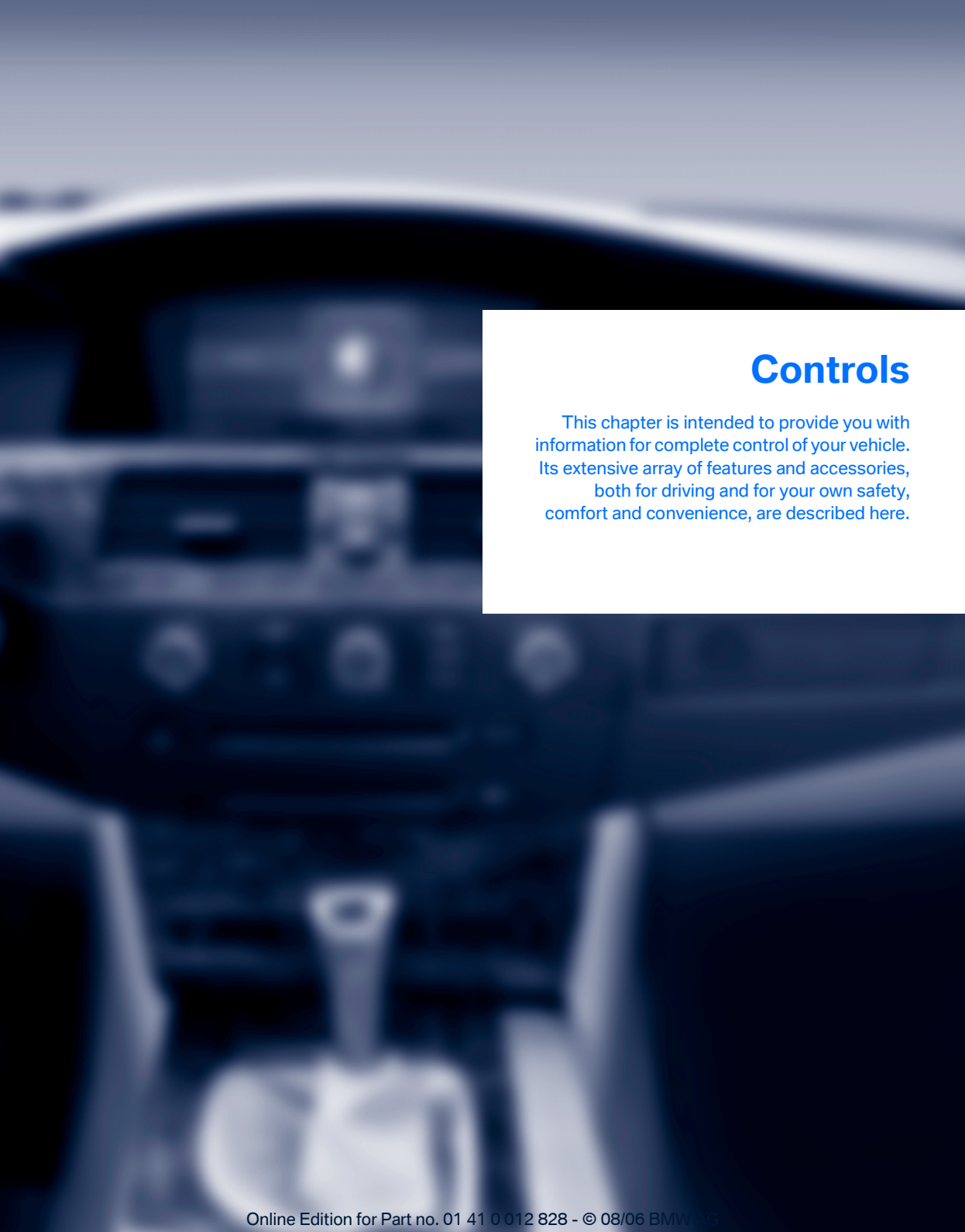
For voice commands, bear the following in mind:

- Say the commands and numbers smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses. This also applies to spelling when entering the destination.
- Always issue commands in the language of the voice command system.
- When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name.
- For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice command system and no abbreviations.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass sunroof* or panorama glass sunroof* closed to avoid interfering outside noise.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG



Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. Its extensive array of features and accessories, both for driving and for your own safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

Opening and closing

Keys/remote control

1 Remote control with integrated key

2 Spare key

3 Adapter for spare key, in glove compartment

Remote control with integrated key

Each remote control contains a battery which is automatically charged in the ignition lock while driving. Drive a longer distance with each remote control at least twice a year to keep the battery charged. For comfort access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 40.

Depending on which remote control is detected by the vehicle during unlocking, different settings are called up and carried out in the vehicle, refer to Personal Profile, page 29.

Information on the required for maintenance is also stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in remote control, page 220.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to unlock the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Glove compartment, refer to page 114
- ▷ Sports Wagon: floor panel flap in cargo bay, refer to page 121
- ▷ Driver's door, refer to page 32
- ▷ Luggage compartment lid, refer to page 34.

New remote controls

To obtain additional or replace lost keys, new remote controls with an integrated key are available at your BMW center.

Spare key

Store the spare key in a safe place such as your wallet. This key is not intended for regular use.

The spare key and integrated key fit the same locks.

Adapter for spare key

The adapter is required so that the vehicle can be started with the spare key or radio readiness can be switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Remove the adapter from the holder in the glove compartment and slide the spare key into the adapter before use.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set a number of functions of your BMW individually according to your preferences. Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use without you having to do anything. When the vehicle is unlocked, the corresponding remote control is detected and the settings stored for it are called up and carried out.

This means that you will always find your BMW set to your own personal settings even if another person with his/her own remote control and settings has used the vehicle since the last time you drove it. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls.

Personal Profile settings

Details on the settings are provided on the specified pages.

- When unlocking with the remote control, either unlock only the driver's door or the entire vehicle, refer to page 30
- Locking the vehicle after a short time or after starting off, refer to page 33
- Assigning the programmable buttons* on the steering wheel, refer to page 53
- Settings for the display on the Control Display:
  - Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 84
  - Measuring units for consumption, route/distances, temperature, and pressure, refer to page 85
  - Language on Control Display, refer to page 85
  - 12h/24h mode of the clock, refer to page 84
  - Date format, refer to page 84
- Lighting settings:
  - Pathway lighting, refer to page 103
  - Daytime running lamps*, refer to page 104
  - Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 66
- Showing optical warning for PDC Park Distance Control*, refer to page 86
- Selection and brightness of display in Head-Up Display*, refer to page 98
- Display settings of BMW Night Vision*, refer to page 101
- Air distribution, temperature in the upper body area and intensity of the automatic climate control, refer to page 108
- Setting voice instructions for destination guidance in the navigation system*, refer to Starting navigation system, page 134

In addition, the following, most recently selected settings are recalled during unlocking:

- Positions of driver's seat, outside mirrors, and steering wheel*, refer to page 47
- Audio sources, volume and tone settings, refer to page 161
- Radio, displaying stored stations, refer to page 164
- Telephone, setting volume, refer to pages 186, 192

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system is ready for operation whenever the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- ▷ Doors
- ▷ Luggage compartment lid or tailgate and rear window
- ▷ Fuel filler door

Operating from outside

- ▷ via the remote control
- ▷ via the door lock
- ▷ with comfort access* via the door handles

At the same time, the anti-theft system is also operated. It prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or door handles. The interior lamps and the courtesy lamps* are also switched on and off with the remote control. The alarm system is armed/disarmed at the same time.
You can find more detailed information on the alarm system on page 37.

Operating from inside

Via the button for central locking, refer to page 33. The fuel filler door is not locked.

In an accident of sufficient severity, the central locking system automatically unlocks the vehicle. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: from outside

▷ Sports Wagon with xDrive: the vehicle is raised somewhat at the rear after locking. This is normal and is linked to minor noises.◀

Using remote control

⚠ Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Unlocking

Press the button.
This unlocks the vehicle.

You can set how the vehicle is unlocked. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Unlock button" and press the controller.
8. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "All doors"
     Press the button once to unlock the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"
     Press the button once to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler door.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Press the button twice to unlock the entire vehicle.

9. Press the controller.

Comfort opening

Press the button longer. The windows and the glass sunroof* open.

Locking

Press the LOCK button.

Switching on interior lamps

With vehicle locked:
Press the LOCK button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.

Panic mode*

You can also trigger the alarm system in case of danger:

Press the button for at least 3 seconds.

Switching off alarm: press any button.

Sedan: opening luggage compartment lid

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The luggage compartment lid opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

During opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.
To prevent accidentally locking yourself out, never lay the remote control in the cargo bay.
A previously locked luggage compartment lid is also locked again after closing.◀

Sports Wagon: unlocking tailgate

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The tailgate will open slightly, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.
To prevent accidentally locking yourself out, never lay the remote control in the cargo bay. A previously locked tailgate is also locked again after closing.
When opening the tailgate, the roll-up cover is raised. Before closing the tailgate, press down the roll-up cover until it engages.◀

If pointed or sharp-edged objects could strike the rear window while driving, be sure to provide protection around all edges. Failure to do so could result in damage to the heating conductors of the rear window.◀

Setting confirmation signals

You can vary or also deactivate the confirmation signals for locking or unlocking.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Confirmation" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

7. Select the desired signal.
8. Press the controller.
   The signal is activated.

Malfunction

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. Should the remote control fail to operate due to interference of this kind, unlock and lock the vehicle via the door lock using a key.

If it is no longer possible to lock the vehicle using the remote control, then the battery is discharged. Use this remote control during an extended drive; this will recharge the battery, refer to page 28.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

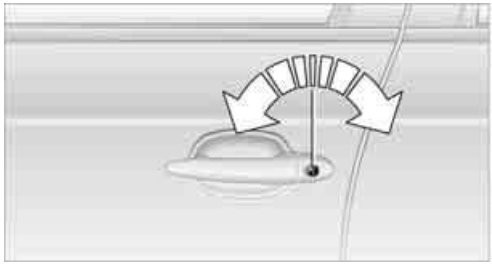
FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS
LX8CAS2

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

Using door lock



When unlocking

1. Turning the key once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler door.
2. Turning the key a second time unlocks the remaining doors and the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

Comfort operation

You also have the option of operating the windows and the glass sunroof* from the driver's door lock.

Turn and hold the key in the positions for unlocking or locking.

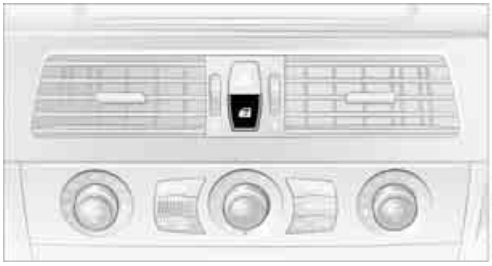
Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the key stops the operation.◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can turn a key all the way to the right or left in the door lock to lock or unlock the driver's door.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Opening and closing: from inside



This button serves to unlock or lock doors and the luggage compartment lid or tailgate and rear window with the front doors closed, but does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler door remains unlocked.

Automatic locking

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.

7. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Relock door if not opened"
     The central locking system automatically locks the vehicle after a short time when no door has been opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after driving"
     The central locking system automatically locks the vehicle as soon as you start to drive.
8. Press the controller.
   ✓ The setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening doors

- ▷ Either unlock the doors together with the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or
- ▷ pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Locking

- ▷ Use the central locking button to lock all of the doors simultaneously, or
- ▷ press down the lock button of a door.
  To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

⚠ Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Doors

Automatic soft closing*

To close the doors, merely press them closed gently. The closing process will then be carried out automatically.

⚠ Make sure that the closing path of the doors is clear; otherwise injuries may result.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate

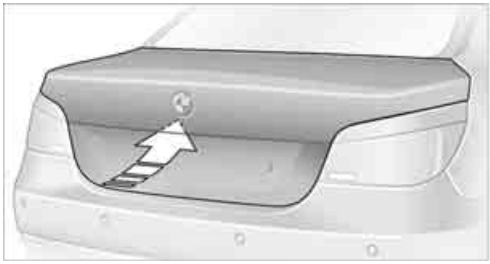
During opening, the luggage compartment lid/tailgate pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.◀

Sedan

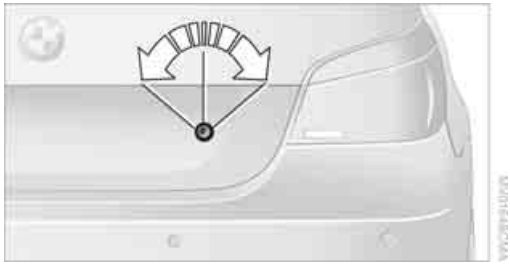
Opening from inside

Press the button: the luggage compartment lid opens unless it has been locked.

Opening from outside



Press the button on the luggage compartment lid or the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: the luggage compartment lid opens.



All keys, refer to page 28, fit the luggage-compartment lid lock.

Locking separately

Turn a key in the lock of the luggage compartment lid to the right past a resistance point and remove it in the horizontal position.

This locks the luggage compartment lid and disconnects it from the central locking system. If you then hand over the remote control without the integrated key, refer to page 28, no access is possible via the luggage compartment lid. This is an advantage when using valet parking, for example.

Unlocking again and opening manually

Turn the key toward the left up to the stop: the luggage compartment lid opens.

If you use the lock to unlock the luggage compartment lid while the alarm system is armed, the alarm will be triggered. You should therefore unlock the vehicle ahead of time. If the alarm is inadvertently triggered: switch off the alarm, refer to page 38.◀

Closing

Make sure that the closing path of the luggage compartment lid is clear, otherwise injuries may result.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the luggage compartment lid make it easier to pull down.

Emergency release

Pull the lever in the cargo bay. The luggage compartment lid is unlocked.

Sports Wagon: opening and closing rear window

Small items can be loaded and unloaded quickly when the rear window is opened separately.

Press the button: the rear window opens somewhat. It can be swung upward.

Press the window closed to close.

When opening the rear window, the roll-up cover is raised. Before closing the rear window, press down the roll-up cover until it engages.◀

If pointed or sharp-edged objects could strike the rear window while driving, be sure to provide protection around all edges. Failure to do so could result in damage to the heating conductors of the rear window.◀

Automatic roll-up cover*

When opening the rear window, the roll-up cover is raised, and when the rear window is closed, it is lowered.

Make sure that the closing area of the roll-up cover is clear of obstructions, otherwise the payload or the roll-up cover may be damaged.◀

Details on the roll-up cover are provided on page 119.

Sports Wagon: tailgate

Opening from inside

Press the button: the tailgate opens somewhat unless it has been locked.

Opening from outside

Press the button on the tailgate or the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

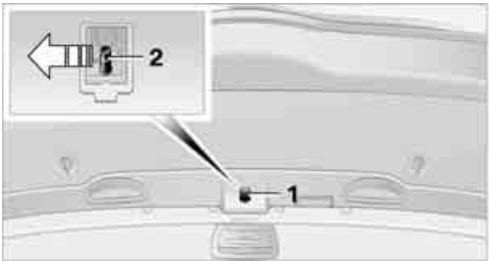
the tailgate opens somewhat. It can be swung upward.

When opening the tailgate, the roll-up cover is raised. Before closing the tailgate, press down the roll-up cover until it engages.◀

Opening manually

In case of an electrical malfunction:

1. From the cargo bay, press out the cover **1** on the tailgate with a screwdriver.



2. Press the locking bar **2** in the direction of the arrow.
3. Open the tailgate and press in the cover again.

The tailgate is locked again as soon as it is closed.

Closing

Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear, otherwise injuries may result.◀

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the tailgate make it easier to pull down.

To close the tailgate, merely press it down gently. The closing process will then be carried out automatically.

Sports Wagon: automatic tailgate operation*

Adjusting opening height

You can adjust how far the tailgate is to open.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Tailgate" and press the controller.

7. Turn the controller. The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Opening tailgate

The tailgate opens automatically when you:

▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate when the vehicle is unlocked.

▷ Press the button in the driver's footwell.

▷ Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.◀

To interrupt opening:

▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▷ Press and hold the button on the remote control.

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

Automatic roll-up cover

When the tailgate or rear window are opened, the roll-up cover is raised, and when the tailgate and rear window are closed, it is lowered.

Make sure that the closing area of the roll-up cover is clear of obstructions, otherwise the payload or the roll-up cover may be damaged.◀

Details on the roll-up cover are provided on page 119.

Closing tailgate

Make sure that the closing path of the tailgate is clear, otherwise injuries may result.◀

The tailgate closes automatically when the button on the inside of the tailgate is pressed.

To interrupt closing:

▷ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

Closing is not canceled when you put the vehicle into motion.◀

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

▷ When a door, the hood or the luggage compartment lid/tailgate or rear window are opened

▷ To movements in the vehicle: interior motion sensor, refer to page 38

▷ To changes in the vehicle's tilt if someone attempts to steal the wheels or tow the vehicle

▷ To interruptions in battery voltage

Unauthorized operations are briefly signaled by the alarm system:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

- with an acoustic alarm
- by switching on the hazard warning flashers
- by flashing the high beams

Arming and disarming alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

The luggage compartment lid/tailgate can also be opened with the system armed with the button on the remote control, refer to page 34. When the luggage compartment lid/tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again.

Switching off alarm

- Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, refer to page 30.
- Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp displays

- The indicator lamp under the interior rear-view mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking: doors, hood, luggage compartment lid/tailgate or rear window is/are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. However, the interior motion sensor is not activated.
- The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: your vehicle has not been disturbed while you were away.
- The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted into the ignition lock, however for a maximum of approx. 5 minutes: your vehicle has been disturbed while you were away.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, e.g. in case of an attempted wheel theft or towing.

Interior motion sensor

In order for the interior motion sensor to function properly, the windows and glass sunroof* must be completely closed.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time. This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- In two-level garages
- When transporting on car-carrying trains, by sea or on a trailer
- When animals are to remain in the vehicle

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

Comfort access*

Comfort access enables you to access your vehicle without having to hold the remote control in your hand. It is sufficient to carry the remote control with you, e.g. in your jacket pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the related remote control in the immediate vicinity or in the interior.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Comfort access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking vehicle
- ▷ Comfort closing
- ▷ Opening luggage compartment lid/tailgate separately
- ▷ Sports Wagon: opening rear window separately
- ▷ Starting engine

Functional requirement

- ▷ The vehicle or the luggage compartment lid/tailgate can only be locked if the vehicle detects that the remote control you are carrying is outside the vehicle.
- ▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- ▷ The engine can only be started if the vehicle detects that the remote control is located in the vehicle.

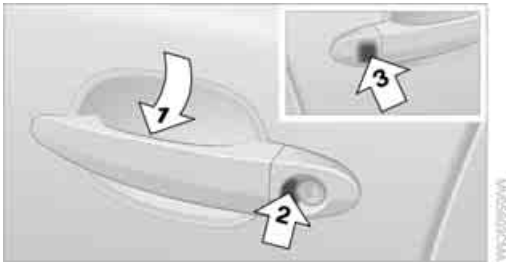
Comparison with ordinary remote control

You can control the functions mentioned previously with the comfort access or by pressing the buttons on the remote control. Therefore, please familiarize yourself with the information on opening and closing beginning on page 28 beforehand.

The special features when using comfort access are described in the following.

▷ Should a short delay occur when opening or closing the windows or the glass sunroof, the system is checking whether a remote control is located in the vehicle. Please repeat opening or closing if necessary.◀

Unlocking



Completely grasp a door handle, arrow **1**. This corresponds to pressing the button.

If a remote control is detected in the interior after unlocking, the electric steering-wheel lock unlocks, refer to page 59.

Locking

- ▷ For the driver's door, touch the area highlighted in the picture, arrow **2**, with your finger for approx. 1 second.
- ▷ For the remaining doors, touch the area highlighted in the picture, arrow **3**, with your finger for approx. 1 second.

This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

▷ Please make sure that the ignition and all electronic systems/consumers are switched off before locking to save the battery.◀

Comfort closing

Hold a finger or the back of the hand on the surface, arrow **2** or **3**.

The windows and the glass sunroof* are closed.

⚠ Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Removing the hand from the door handle stops the closing process immediately.◀

Opening luggage compartment lid/tailgate separately

Press the button on the luggage compartment lid/tailgate. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

If a remote control accidentally left in the cargo bay is detected in the locked vehicle after closing the luggage compartment lid/tailgate or the rear window, the lid or rear window opens again. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal* sounds.◀

Sports Wagon: opening rear window separately

Press the button on the rear window, refer to page 35.

Switching on radio readiness

By briefly pressing the Start/Stop button, you switch on the radio readiness, refer to page 59.

When doing so, do not depress the brake or clutch pedal, otherwise the engine will start immediately.◀

Starting engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition if a remote control is located in the interior of the vehicle. It need not be inserted in the ignition lock, refer to page 59.

If you take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle with the engine running, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. As long as no remote control is detected in the vehicle, it is only possible to restart the engine within approx. 10 seconds after it is switched off.

Switching off engine with automatic transmission

The engine can only be switched off in selector lever position P, refer to page 61.
To switch off the engine in selector lever position N, the remote control must be inserted in the ignition lock.

Before driving into a car wash with automatic transmission

1. Insert remote control into ignition lock.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Place selector lever in position N.
4. Switch off the engine.

The vehicle can roll.

Malfunction

The comfort access function may malfunction due to local radio waves. Then open or close the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with a key. To start the engine following this, insert the remote control in the ignition lock.

Replacing battery

The remote control for comfort access contains a battery which must be replaced if necessary.

1. Remove integrated key from remote control, refer to page 28.
2. Remove cover.

3. Lay in new battery with positive side facing upward.
4. Press cover closed.

Return used battery to a recycling collection point or to your BMW center.◀

Windows

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the windows and keep them in your field of vision until they are shut.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the windows and injure themselves.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Opening, closing

▷ Press switch to resistance point:
The window continues to open as long as you keep the switch pressed.

▷ Press switch beyond resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Separate switches for the rear windows are located in the rear.

For information on using the comfort operation at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 31 or 32.

For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 39.

After switching off ignition

You can still operate the windows with the remote control removed or the ignition switched off for approx. 1 minute, as long as neither of the front doors has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

⚠ Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the window's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.
Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows, otherwise the pinch protection system will be impaired.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside or if, for example, ice on the window prevents normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold. The pinch protection system is limited and the window opens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold again within approx. 4 seconds. The window closes without the pinch protection system.

Safety switch

With the safety switch, you can prevent the rear windows from being opened or closed via the switches in the rear passenger area, by children, for example. The LED lights up when this safety feature is activated.

⚠ Always press the safety switch when children ride in the rear, otherwise uncontrolled closing of the windows could lead to injuries.◀

Glass sunroof*, electric

The glass sunroof is ready for operation with the ignition switched on, refer to page 59.

⚠ To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the glass sunroof and keep it in your field of vision until it is closed.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

example, operate the roof and injure themselves.◀

Raising

Press the switch.

▷ The closed glass sunroof is raised and the sliding visor opens slightly.

▷ The opened glass sunroof automatically moves into the raised position. The sliding visor remains completely open.

⚠ Do not use force to close the sliding visor with the glass sunroof in its raised position, otherwise the mechanism will be damaged.◀

Opening, closing

▷ Slide the switch back to the resistance point.
The glass sunroof and the sliding visor open together for as long as you hold the switch in this position.

▷ Slide the switch back beyond the resistance point.
The glass sunroof and the sliding visor open automatically. Briefly press the switch again to stop the opening movement.

In a similar manner, the glass sunroof closes when you slide the switch forward. The sliding visor remains open and can be closed by hand.

For information on using the comfort operation at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 31 or 32.

For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 39.

Opening and closing automatically

Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

The following movements are also automatic:

▷ When the sunroof is open, press the switch in the raising direction: the sunroof is raised all the way.

▷ When the sunroof is raised, press the switch in the opening direction: the sunroof is opened all the way.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Pinch protection system

If the glass sunroof encounters resistance when closing from roughly the center of the roof opening or when closing from the raised position, the closing action is interrupted and the glass sunroof reopens a short way.

⚠ Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the sunroof's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the sunroof would continue closing.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside, press the switch beyond the resistance point and hold. The roof closes without the pinch protection system.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power loss, the sunroof may only respond to the raise command. The system must be initialized. BMW recommends having this work done by your BMW center.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Moving manually

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the glass sunroof manually:

1. Fold the cover panel down, if necessary using a screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 222.

2. Insert the Allen wrench supplied with the onboard tool kit, refer to page 222, into the opening provided. Move the glass sunroof in the desired direction. The arrow below indicates the rotation direction for closing.

Sports Wagon: Panorama glass sunroof

The panorama glass sunroof is ready for operation with the ignition switched on, refer to page 59.

⚠ To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the panorama glass sunroof and keep it in your field of vision until it is closed. Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the roof and injure themselves.◀

Raising, opening, closing

Press the switch or slide it in the desired direction up to the resistance point.

The sliding visor is opened:

▷ together with the sunroof

▷ slightly when the sunroof is raised

With the sunroof closed or raised, the sliding visor can be opened and closed independently.

For information on using the comfort operation at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 31 or 32.

For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 39.

Ventilation setting

Press the switch:
The sunroof is raised and the sliding visor is opened slightly.

Opening and closing automatically

Press the switch beyond the resistance point.
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening and closing sunroof and sliding visor together

Press the switch beyond the resistance point twice consecutively.
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

Each time the panorama glass sunroof is completely opened and then closed, it stops in the comfort position. If desired, continue the motion following this with the switch.

In the comfort position the wind noises in the interior are reduced.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Pinch protection system

If the panorama glass sunroof or sliding visor encounter resistance when closing from roughly one third of the sunroof opening or when closing from the raised position, the closing action is interrupted and the panorama glass sunroof and sliding visor reopen a little.

Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the sunroof's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the sunroof would continue closing.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside, press the switch beyond the resistance point and hold. The roof closes without the pinch protection system.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power loss, the sunroof may only respond to the raise command. The system must be initialized. BMW recommends having this work done by your BMW center.

Moving manually

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the roof manually:

1. Fold back the cover, using the screwdriver from the toolkit at the points indicated if necessary, refer to page 222.

2. Remove the Allen key from the mounting next to the toolkit and insert it in the opening provided. Move the sunroof in the desired direction. The arrow below indicates the rotation direction for closing.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Adjusting

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In the interaction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the seat position plays an important role in an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

For additional information on transporting children safely, refer to page 55.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always hold the steering wheel by its rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms in the event of airbag deployment.
No one and nothing is to come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly and does not rest feet or legs on the instrument panel, otherwise leg injuries can occur if the front airbags are triggered.
Make sure that occupants do not rest their head on the side or head airbags, otherwise injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.◀

Even if you adhere to all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 96.

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Head restraints, refer to page 48.

Safety belts

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle is provided with five seats, which are all equipped with a safety belt.

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. The safety belt may not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be pinched. Wear the safety belt without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Otherwise the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen. Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly and pull the belt in the upper body area periodically to readjust the tension, in order to avoid a reduction in the restraint of the safety belt.
Sports Wagon: if the center safety belt in the rear is used, the larger backrest half must be locked, refer to page 120, otherwise the middle safety belt has no restraining action.◀

Safety belts, refer to page 50.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Seats

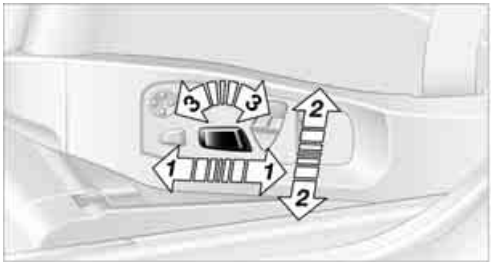
Note before adjusting

Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement, and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.
Also on the passenger side, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven, otherwise there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

Please observe the information on damage to safety belts provided on page 50 and the information on the active front head restraints* on page 49.

Adjusting seat

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 45.◀

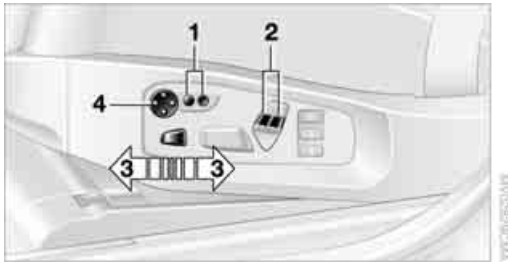


1 Longitudinal direction
2 Height
3 Angle

4 Backrest

Adjusting comfort seat*

In this seat, you can also adjust:



1 Backrest width
2 Shoulder support
3 Thigh support
4 Lumbar support*, see below

Shoulder support

the adjustable upper backrest also supports the back in the shoulder region. This provides a relaxed driving position and helps relieve stress on the shoulder muscles.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Adjusting lumbar support*

You can also adjust the contour of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

- ▷ Increase or decrease curvature: press front or rear section of switch.
- ▷ Shift curvature up or down: press upper or lowers section of switch.

Adjusting active backrest width*

First set a comfortable backrest width, see above. Based on the backrest width set, the lateral support is automatically adapted to the current driving situation.

The adaptation of the backrest width and the speed of the adjustment vary depending on the program. You can select from among three programs from comfort to sport.

Press button once per program:

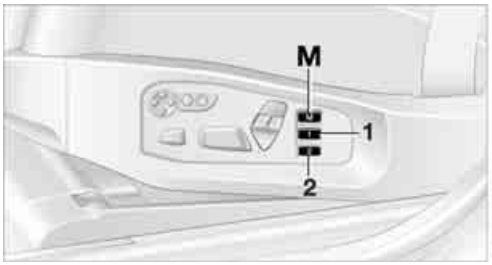
- ▷ "Comfort" program: one LED
- ▷ "Normal" program: two LEDs
- ▷ "Sport" program: three LEDs

To switch off: press button longer.

Easy entry/exit*

To facilitate entry and exit, the backrest width temporarily opens all the way.

Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory*



You can store and request two different positions for the driver's seat and passenger seat*, exterior rearview mirrors, and steering wheel.

The adjustment of the lumbar support is not stored in the memory.

Storing

1. Switch on radio readiness or ignition, refer to page 59.
2. Set the desired seat, exterior mirror and steering wheel positions.
3. Press the M button:
   The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2**:
   The LED goes out.

Requesting

⚠ Do not request a position from the memory while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident from unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel.◀

Comfort mode

1. Open the driver's door after unlocking or switch on radio readiness.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1** or **2**.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off.
2. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2** and maintain pressure until the adjustment process has been completed.

If the M button was pressed inadvertently: press the button again; the LED goes out.

Requesting with remote control

The last positions of the driver's seat, the exterior rearview mirrors, and steering wheel are stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can choose when the position is requested:

▷ Request when unlocking vehicle

▷ Request when opening driver's door

When using this feature, always make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty and unobstructed. Failure to do so could cause injury to persons or damage to objects behind the seat as a result of a rearward movement of the seat.◀

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Last seat pos." and press the controller.
8. Select "After unlocking" or "After door opened".

9. Press the controller.

To cancel the request:
Select "Deactivated" and press the controller.

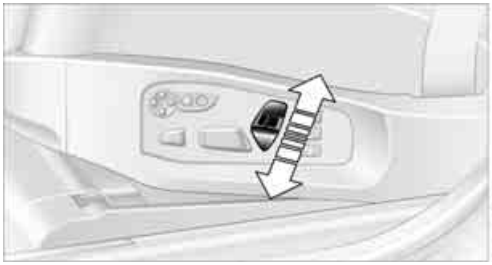
Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident. Only remove the head restraints if no one will be sitting on the seat in question. Reinstall the head restraints before transporting passengers, as otherwise the head restraint cannot provide its protective function.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Front seats: height adjustment



You can adjust the height of the head restraints electrically.

Removing:

1. Move the head restraint up as far as possible.
2. Pull out the head restraint completely with a firm movement.

Installing:

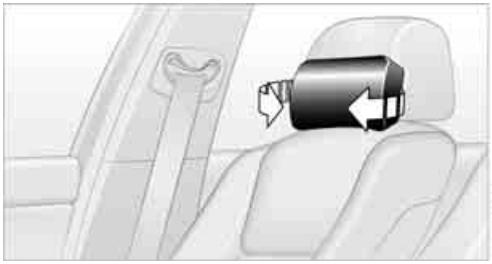
1. Push the switch upward for a maximum of approx. 10 seconds, however if possible only until a change is the humming noise indicates that the installed head restraint would have been moved all the way to the top.
2. Insert the head restraint and press down on both sides until it is heard and felt to engage.

Front seats: angle adjustment

Swivel the head restraint.

With the comfort seat, use the shoulder support to set the distance to the back of the head.

Adjusting side extensions in comfort seat



You can fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

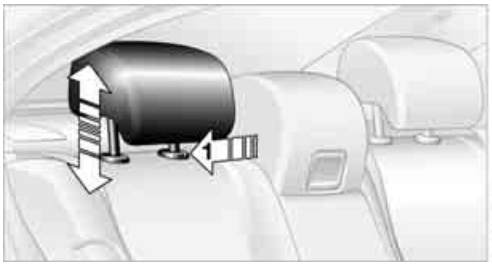
Front head restraints, active*

The comfort seats are equipped with an active head restraint.

In the event of a rear-end collision of sufficient severity, the active head restraint reduces the distance to the head.

Do not use seat or head restraint covers and do not hang objects, e.g. clothes hangers, on the head restraints or attach any accessories to the seat or head restraint. Otherwise the protective function of the active head restraints will be impaired and personal safety endangered.◀

Rear seats: height adjustment



▷ To raise: pull up.

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and push the head restraint downward.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

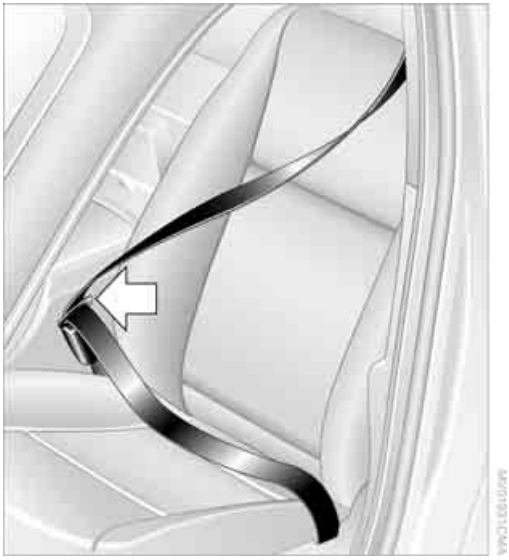
Removing

1. Pull the head restraint upward to the stop.
2. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the head restraint all the way out.

Safety belts

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 45.◀

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.



Fastening

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and passenger seat*

The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. A message also appears on the Control Display. Please check whether the safety belt is correctly positioned.

The safety belt reminder is operative at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the passenger seat.

Releasing

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted, refer to page 46.

The two rear safety belt buckles integrated into the rear seat are for passengers sitting on the left and right. The belt buckle embossed with the word CENTER is intended exclusively for use by passengers riding in the center position.

Damage to safety belts

In the event of loads caused by accidents or other damage: replace the belt system including the safety belt tensioners and any child restraint systems, and have the belt anchor points checked. Only have this work carried out at a BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise correct operation of this safety equipment is not guaranteed.◀

Heated seats*

Front

The temperature setting progresses one step through its control sequence each time you

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

press the button. The maximum temperature is supplied when three LEDs are lit.

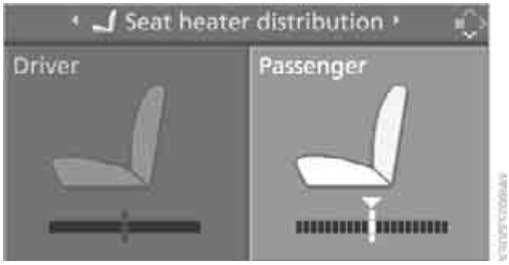
To switch off: press the button longer.

Temperature distribution

The heat output can be distributed variously in the seat cushion and the backrest.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Seat heater distribution" and press the controller.
4. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Driver" or "Passenger".



5. Turn the controller. The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.

Rear

Operation similar to front seat heating; two temperature levels, without temperature distribution.

Active seat ventilation*

The system progresses one step through the control sequence each time you press the button.

To switch off: press the button longer.

▷ The highest position with three LEDs is used for rapid cooling, e.g. when the vehicle has gotten heated up. After a short time, the system is automatically switched down one position in order to prevent excessive cooling. ◀

Active seat*

The seat cushion is actively varied by alternately raising and lowering the right and left half of the seat cushion. This reduces muscular tension and fatigue to help prevent lower back pain.

Press the button to switch on; the LED lights up.

If you switch off the active seat, it can take up to 1 minute before the two halves of the seat cushion have returned to their initial position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

The mirror on the passenger's side is more curved than the driver's mirror. Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance of following traffic based on what you see in the mirrors, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀

1 Adjusting

2 Switching to the other mirror or to the automatic curb monitor

Storing the mirror positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 47.

Adjusting manually

You can also adjust the mirrors manually by pressing against the outer edges of their mirror glass.

Folding mirrors in and out

To prevent the exterior mirrors on this vehicle from being damaged, always fold them in by hand before entering an automatic car wash.◀

Automatic heating

Below a certain outdoor temperature, both exterior mirrors are automatically heated when the motor is running or the ignition is switched on.

Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror – automatic curb monitor*

Activating

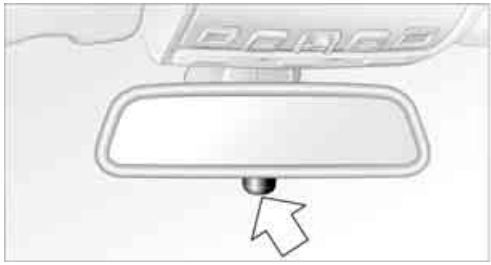
1. Slide switch into the driver's side mirror position, arrow **1**.

2. Engage reverse gear or selector lever position R.
   The mirror glass tilts downward somewhat on the passenger's side. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle – such as a curb – when parking, etc.

Deactivating

Slide switch into the passenger side mirror position, arrow **2**.

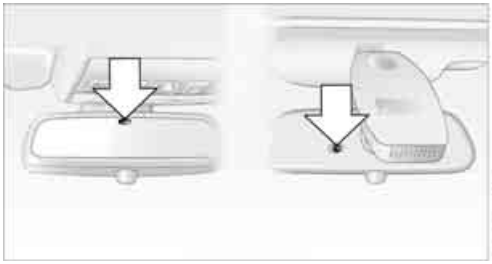
Interior rearview mirror



To reduce the dazzle effect of following vehicles at night, turn the knob.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature*



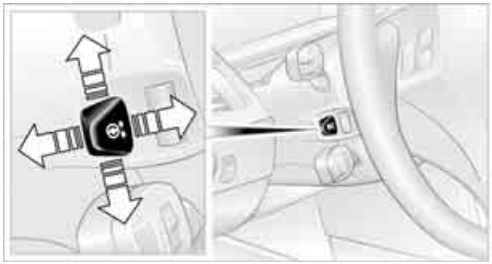
This feature is controlled by two photocells in the interior rearview mirror. One is integrated into the glass of the mirror, while the other is located at an offset position on the rear of the mirror housing.

For trouble-free operation, keep the photocells clean and do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield. Do not attach stickers of any kind to the windshield in front of the mirror, either.

Steering wheel

Adjusting

Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident as the result of unexpected movement.◀



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing steering wheel positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 47.

Electric steering-wheel lock

The steering wheel locks or unlocks automatically when the remote control is removed or inserted, refer to page 59.

Easy entry/exit*

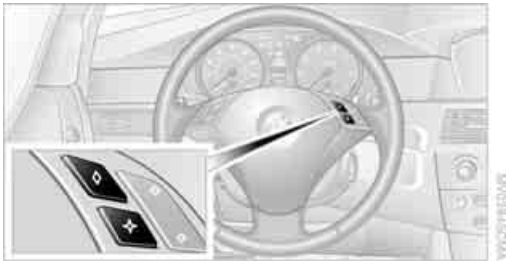
To facilitate entry and exit, the steering wheel temporarily moves into the uppermost position.

Steering wheel heater*

Press the button.

When the steering wheel heater is operating, the LED in the button lights up.

Programmable buttons* on steering wheel



You can program the buttons individually.

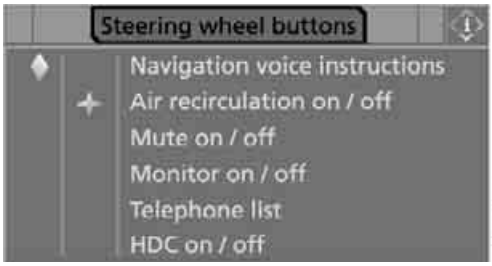
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

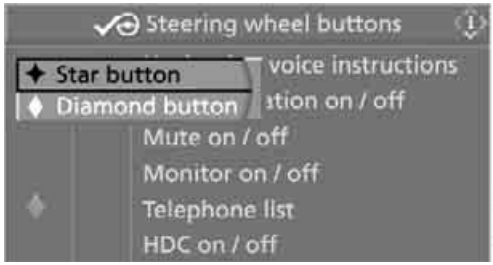
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "Steering wheel buttons" is selected and press the controller.



A list of different functions appears:

- ▷ "Navigation voice instructions"
  Voice instructions for the navigation system*
- ▷ "Air recirculation on / off"
  Permanently shutting off outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control on page 110
- ▷ "Mute on / off"
  Mutes the audio sources
- ▷ "Monitor on / off"
  Switches the Control Display on/off
- ▷ "Telephone list"*
  Display/hide phone book or last list of stored phone numbers
- ▷ "HDC on / off"
  Switches HDC Hill Descent Control* on/off
- ▷ "Next entertainment source"
  Changes audio source
- ▷ "Night Vision on / off"
  Switches BMW Night Vision* on/off

5. Select the desired function and press the controller.
6. Select the button if necessary and press the controller.



You can operate the selected function using the corresponding button.

Operating function

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

If you have programmed "Navigation voice instructions" for one of the buttons:

- ▷ To switch voice instructions on/off:
  Press button longer.
- ▷ To repeat the last voice instruction:
  Press the button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, otherwise they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g. by opening the doors.◀

Children always in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or with a height under 5 ft/150 cm may only be transported in the rear in child restraint systems which correspond to the age, weight and height of the child. Otherwise there is an increased danger of injury in an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, size and weight.

With the exception of the driver's seat, all seats in your BMW comply with the recommendations of the standard SAE J1819 for the safe securing of child restraint systems in motor vehicles.

Exception for front passenger seat

Should it be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags on the passenger side must be deactivated. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury for the child if the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint system. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags, refer to page 97.

Installing child restraint systems

Observe the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for selection, installation and use of the child restraint systems. Otherwise the degree of protection may be reduced.◀

Backrest width* on front passenger seat

Before mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the backrest width adjustment must be open completely. After mounting the child's seat, no memory position may be called up and the active backrest width adjustment must be deactivated, otherwise the stability of the child's seat on the front passenger seat is limited.◀

1. After unlocking the vehicle, sit on the front passenger seat and close the door to call up the memory position.
2. Completely open the backrest width adjustment, refer to page 46.
3. Deactivate active backrest width adjustment, refer to page 47.
4. Install child's seat.

Child seat security

All rear safety belts and the safety belt for the front passenger can be locked against pulling out to secure child restraint systems.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Locking safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull taut against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

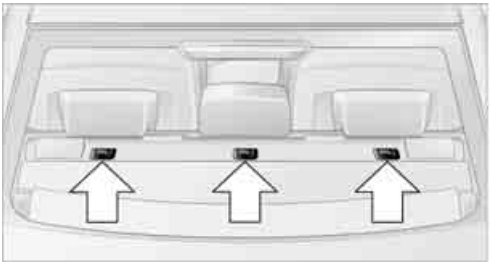
Unlocking safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

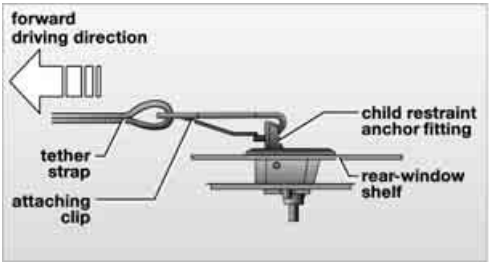
Child restraint system with tether strap

Only use the tether-strap mounting points to secure child restraint systems, otherwise the mounting points could be damaged.◀

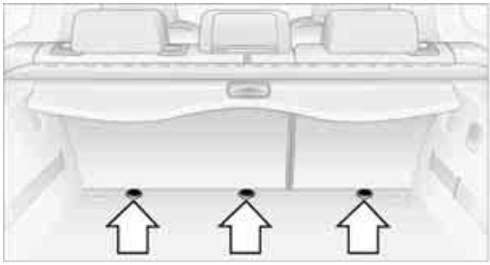
Sedan



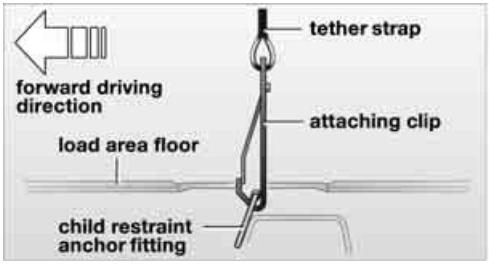
There are three additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap, refer to arrows. Fold the corresponding mounting point upward before using.



Sports Wagon



Three are three additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap, refer to arrows, under covers in the cargo bay floor. Before using, remove the corresponding cover with a screwdriver.



Placement of tether strap

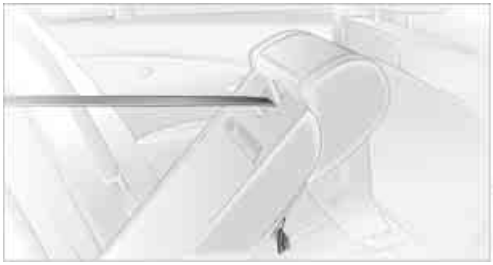
Outer seats:

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Guide the tether strap through the bracket of the head restraint.
3. Slide the head restraint into the bottom position.
4. Hook in the tether strap on the mounting point.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Center seat:

1. Fold the center armrest somewhat toward the front.
2. Guide the tether strap through the opening.



3. Fold back the center armrest.
4. Hook in the tether strap on the mounting point.

On the Sports Wagon, also guide the tether strap between the backrest and the roll-up cover on all rear seats.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

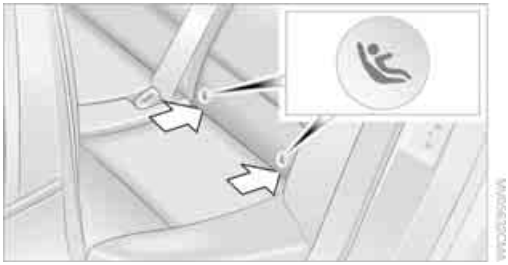
LATCH: Lower Anchor and Tethers for CHildren.

⚠ To attach and use a LATCH child restraint system, follow the operating and safety instructions of the system manufacturer.◀

Before attaching the LATCH child's seat, pull the belt away from the region of the child restraint fixing system.

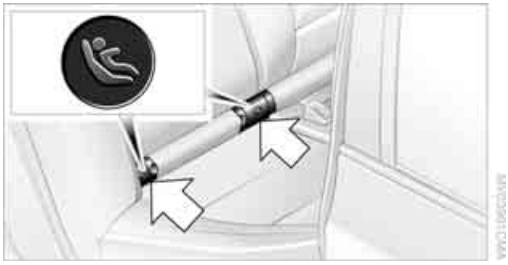
⚠ Make sure that the LATCH anchor fittings are properly engaged and the child restraint system firmly contacts the backrest.◀

Sedan: rear seats



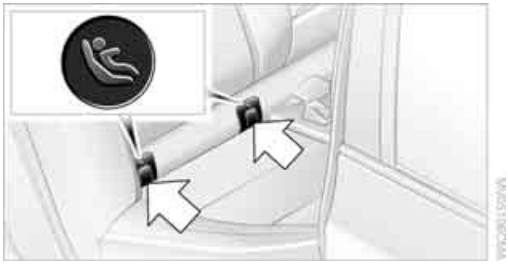
The anchor points for the LATCH anchors are located at the positions indicated by arrows in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Sedan: rear seats with through-loading system*



The anchor points for the LATCH anchors are located behind the indicated protective caps. Remove the cover caps before mounting the child's seat.

Sports Wagon: rear seats



The anchor points for the LATCH anchors are located behind the indicated protective caps and are covered again after the child's seat is removed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

On trips

If the vehicle is equipped with rear side airbags, make sure that children do not lean out of the child's seat towards the door panels. Otherwise injuries can be caused if the side airbags are triggered.◀

Child-safety locks for rear doors

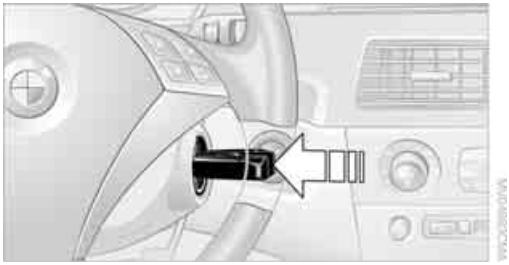
Slide down the safety lever on the rear doors: the door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for power windows

Always press the safety switch for the power windows, refer to page 41, when children are riding in the rear of the vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Ignition lock



Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.

- ▷ Radio readiness switches on.
  Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation.
- ▷ The electric steering-wheel lock audibly unlocks.

⚠ Before moving the vehicle, insert the remote control into the ignition lock; otherwise, the electric steering-wheel lock will not be unlocked and the vehicle cannot be steered.◀

Removing remote control from ignition lock

Briefly press in the remote control; it is pushed out somewhat.

- ▷ The ignition is switched off if it was still switched on.
- ▷ The electric steering-wheel lock audibly locks.

Automatic transmission

The remote control can only be removed when selector lever position P is selected: interlock.

Start/Stop button

Briefly pressing the Start/Stop button several times switches the radio readiness or the ignition on and off.

▷ Briefly pressing the Start/Stop button with the brake or clutch pedal depressed starts the engine.◀

Radio readiness

Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The time and outside temperature are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is automatically switched off:

- ▷ when the remote control is removed from the ignition lock
- ▷ with comfort access* by touching the sensitive surface on the door handle, refer to Locking on page 39

Ignition on

All electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The odometer and the trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page 75.

▷ Please switch off the ignition and the electronic systems/consumers which are not required when the engine is not running to save the battery.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Radio readiness and ignition switched off

All indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

Starting engine

Do not run the engine in closed rooms, otherwise the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause unconsciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running, as such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.
Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, select the idling position, or move the selector lever to position P and apply the handbrake, otherwise the vehicle can begin to roll.◀

When starting the engine, do not press the accelerator pedal.

Do not allow the engine to warm up by leaving it running while the vehicle remains stationary. Instead, begin to drive at a moderate engine speed.

Do not press either the brake or the clutch pedal as long as you do not want to start the engine. The engine starts when you briefly press the Start/Stop button and press the brake pedal with an automatic transmission* or the clutch pedal with a manual transmission.◀

Manual transmission

1. Apply the handbrake.
2. Depress the clutch pedal and select the idling position.
3. Briefly press the Start/Stop button.

The system responds by automatically engaging the starter for a certain period and automatically disengaging it as soon as the engine starts.

Automatic transmission*

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Place selector lever in position P or N.
3. Briefly press the Start/Stop button.

The system responds by automatically engaging the starter for a certain period and automatically disengaging it as soon as the engine starts.

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission*

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Engage selector lever position N and make sure that this position is also indicated in the instrument cluster.
3. Briefly press the Start/Stop button.

The system responds by automatically engaging the starter for a certain period and automatically disengaging it as soon as the engine starts.

If the engine fails to start, depress the brake pedal and press the selector lever to the right then engage position N. Watch the display in the instrument cluster while doing so.◀

Special starting conditions

Depress the accelerator pedal half way when starting the engine in the following situations:

- ▷ The engine fails to start on the first attempt, e.g. if it is very hot or cold.
- ▷ The engine is started at very low temperatures, below approx. +5 °F /–15 °C, at high altitudes, over approx. 3,300 ft/1,000 m.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession or repeated starting attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or inadequately burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀

Switching off engine

Do not remove the remote control from the ignition lock while the vehicle is rolling, otherwise the steering-wheel lock would engage while steering.
When leaving the vehicle, always take the remote control with you.
When parking on a downhill incline, apply the handbrake, otherwise the vehicle could roll away.◀

Manual transmission

1. Briefly press the Start/Stop button with the vehicle stopped.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Apply the handbrake.

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission*

1. Apply the handbrake.
2. Engage a driving position.
3. Briefly press the Start/Stop button.
   If N is engaged when switching off the engine, this will be pointed out to you optically and acoustically.

Automatic transmission*

1. Select selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Briefly press the Start/Stop button.

Handbrake

The handbrake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Indicator lamp

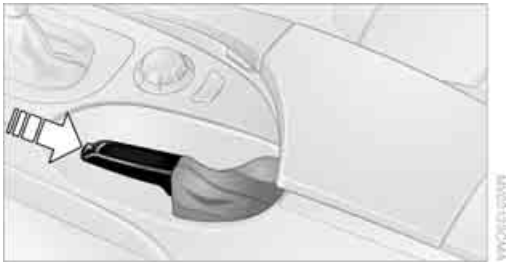
The indicator lamp lights up, and a signal also sounds when starting off. The handbrake is applied.

Indicator lamp for Canadian models.

Engaging

The lever locks in position automatically.

Releasing



Pull slightly upwards, press the button and lower the lever.

If exceptional circumstances should make it necessary to apply the handbrake while the vehicle is in motion, do not pull it too strongly. In doing so, continuously press the button of the handbrake lever. Otherwise excessive pressure can lead to the rear wheels locking up and loss of traction – fishtailing – at the rear axle.◀

To prevent corrosion and one-sided braking action, occasionally apply the handbrake lightly when the vehicle is slowly coming to a stop if the traffic conditions are suitable. The brake lamps do not light up when the handbrake is applied.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Manual transmission

While shifting in the 5th/6th gear lane, press the gearshift lever toward the right, otherwise accidental shifting into the 3rd or 4th gear could result in engine damage.◀

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. When pressing the gearshift lever to the left, overcome some resistance.

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission*

The concept

The SMG Sequential Manual Transmission is an automated manual transmission in which an electrohydraulic system handles the clutching and gear changes.

The SMG is operated with the selector lever and two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

It offers you the following functions:

- Optional manual or automatic operation: Sequential mode or Drive mode
- You have a choice of two driving programs: Normal or Sport, refer to Dynamic Driving Control page 63
- Automatic downshifting and prevention of incorrect shifting even in Sequential operation
- Acceleration assistant, refer to page 64

Selector lever positions

- R: Reverse gear
- N: Neutral
- One-touch functions for Sequential mode:
  +: manual upshifting
  –: manual downshifting
- D: activate/deactivate the Drive mode

The transmission automatically shifts into N if the driver's door is opened with the engine running and neither the pedals, the shift paddles nor the selector lever are operated.
This is signaled by an acoustic signal and the flashing display N in the instrument cluster; a message appears on the Control Display.◀

Gear display

R N 1 to 6

The currently engaged gear is displayed, preceded by a D in Drive mode.

It is only possible to recognize whether the desired selector lever position is engaged with this display.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Shiftlock

Press the brake pedal before shifting out of N; the shift command will not be executed unless the brake is applied.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

Sequential mode

After every engine start, as soon as the selector lever is pushed to the right and the brake pedal is depressed, the Sequential mode is activated.

You can shift up and down using the shift paddles or the selector lever. You do not need to remove your foot from the accelerator to do so.

It is also possible to start off in second gear, e.g. in slippery conditions.

In the following situations, SMG thinks for you:

- ▷ Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system.
- ▷ When the vehicle is stationary, the transmission automatically downshifts into first gear.
- ▷ Shortly before dropping below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission downshifts automatically even without your intervention.

D Drive mode

In the Drive mode, all forward gears are shifted automatically.

Shifting from Sequential mode to Drive mode: press selector lever to the right toward D.

Kick-down: for rapid acceleration, e.g. when passing, press the accelerator pedal as far down as it will go. You achieve maximum acceleration.

To switch back into the Sequential mode: press selector lever to the right again toward D or shift using the shift paddles or the selector lever.

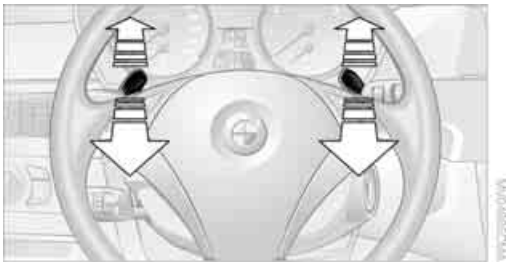
⚠ Start off quickly on slopes. Do not hold the vehicle on a hill by pressing the accelerator, but apply the handbrake instead. Otherwise overheating can occur in the transmission region.◀

Gear changes

Using selector lever

- ▷ To upshift, pull the selector lever back.
- ▷ To downshift, push the selector lever forward.

Using shift paddles on steering wheel



- ▷ To upshift, pull one of the shift paddles.
- ▷ To downshift, press.

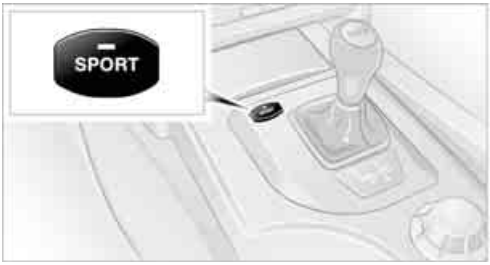
Dynamic Driving Control

The Dynamic Driving Control makes it possible for your BMW to react in an even more performance-oriented manner at the push of a button:

- ▷ The engine responds more spontaneously to accelerator pedal movements.
- ▷ Gearshifts are faster.
- ▷ The engine speed range is used optimally in the Drive mode.
- ▷ Cruise control*:
  The stored speed is reached more quickly when it is requested.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Activating system



Press the SPORT button.
The LED in the button lights up and SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Deactivating system

Press the SPORT button again.

The LED in the button and SPORT in the instrument cluster go out.

Acceleration assistant

The acceleration assistant enables optimized vehicle acceleration at racing car level on road surfaces with good adhesion when starting off.

Do not use the acceleration assistant too often, otherwise components will wear prematurely.◀

1. Activate the Dynamic Driving Control.
2. Deactivate DSC, refer to page 88.
3. Quickly press accelerator pedal all the way down: kick-down. The ideal starting-off engine speed is set.

To maintain vehicle stability, reactivate DSC afterward.◀

Automatic transmission with Steptronic*

In addition to fully automatic operation, you can also manually shift with the Steptronic, refer to page 65.

Selector lever positions

P R N D M/S + –

Displays in instrument cluster

P R N D DS M1 to M6

The selector lever position is indicated, and in the manual mode the gear currently engaged.

Changing selector lever positions

▷ Only move the selector lever from position P when the engine is running: interlock.

▷ With the vehicle stopped, press the brake before shifting out of P or N, otherwise the selector lever is blocked: shiftlock.

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.◀

A lock prevents accidentally shifting into selector lever positions R and P. To cancel the lock, press the button on the front of the selector lever, refer to arrow.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.
The rear wheels are locked.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

N Neutral

Can, for example, be engaged in automatic car washes. The vehicle can roll.

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are available.
Under normal operating conditions, the fuel consumption is lowest when driving in position D.

Kick-down

The kick-down mode provides maximum acceleration: press the accelerator pedal beyond the full-throttle resistance point.

Sport program and manual mode M/S

Move selector lever from position D toward the left into the M/S shifting slot:
The sport program is activated and DS is displayed in the instrument cluster. This position is recommended for a performance-oriented driving style.

When the selector lever is pressed forward or back, the manual mode is activated and the Steptronic shifts the gear. The instrument cluster shows M1 through M6.

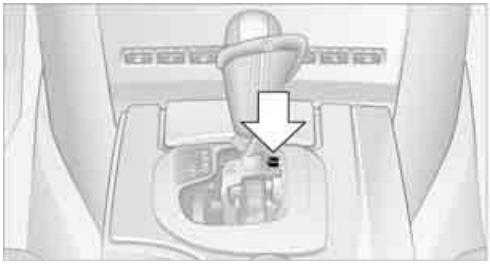
Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system. The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

To use the automatic function again, move the selector lever to the right into position D.

Deactivating selector lever interlock

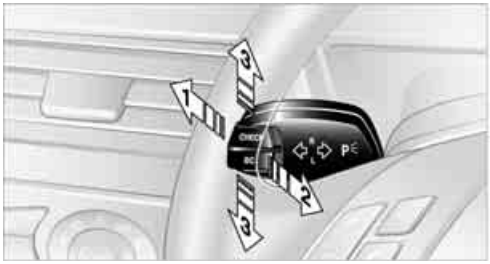
If the selector lever is blocked in position P even though the button on the selector lever is pressed, the selector lever interlock can be deactivated:

1. Unclip the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve over the selector lever.



3. Press the lever at the point marked in red with the screwdriver from the onboard toolkit, refer to page 222, and move the selector lever into the desired position.

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

▷ Atypically rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb needs to be replaced.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Signaling briefly

Press lever to resistance point and hold for as long as you wish to signal.

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point; the turn signal flashes three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

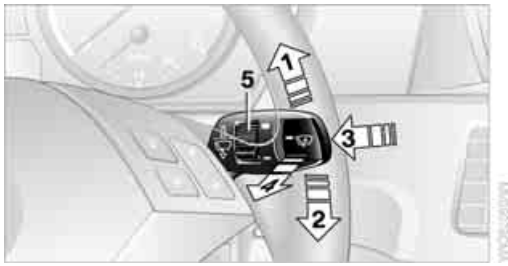
iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Triple turn signal" and press the controller.
   Triple turn signaling is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Wiper system



1 Switching on wipers
2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
3 Activating/deactivating rain sensor
4 Cleaning windshield, headlamps and BMW Night Vision camera*
5 Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Switching on wipers

Pull the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.
The system reverts to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

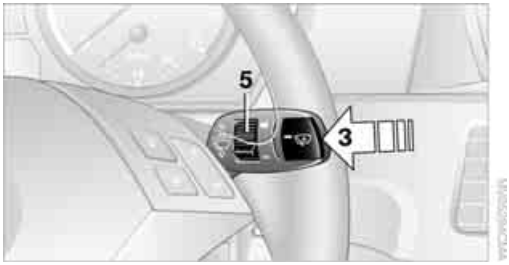
Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.
The system reverts to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Rain sensor

The wiper operation is controlled automatically as a function of the rain intensity. The rain sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Activating rain sensor



Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Turn the knurled wheel **5**.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**. The LED goes out.

Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation.◀

Cleaning windshield, headlamps* and BMW Night Vision camera*

Pull the lever, arrow **4**.

The system sprays washer fluid against the windshield and activates the wipers for a brief period.

With the vehicle lighting switched on, the headlamps and the BMW Night Vision camera are also cleaned simultaneously at suitable intervals.

Do not use the washing mechanisms if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do so, your vision could be obscured. To avoid freezing, use a washer fluid antifreeze, refer to Washer fluid. Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

Windshield washer nozzles

Both windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Sports Wagon: Rear window wiper

1 Intermittent mode. When reverse gear is engaged, continuous operation is switched on automatically

2 Cleaning the rear window

Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

Washer fluid

Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. Always keep it well away from sparks and open flames, and store it in tightly closed containers well out of the reach of children. Always observe the instructions for use provided on the containers.◀

Washer fluid reservoir

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

In order to maintain the mixture ratio, mix the washer fluid before filling.◀

Capacity

Sedan:
Approx. 3.2 US quarts/3 liters, with headlamp washer system* approx. 5.3 US quarts/5 liters.

Sports Wagon: approx. 5.3 US quarts/5 liters.

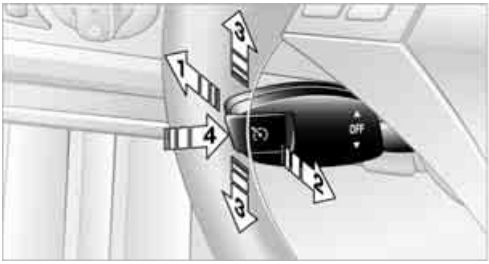
Cruise control*

The concept

The cruise control is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h and higher. The vehicle stores and maintains the speed that you set using the lever mounted on the steering column.

Do not use the cruise control under driving conditions that do not permit a constant speed, e.g. when driving on winding roads, in heavy traffic or in poor road conditions such as snow, rain, ice, and loose road surface. Otherwise you could loose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◀

One lever for all functions



1 Maintaining speed, storing speed, and accelerating

2 Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

3 Interrupting cruise control

4 Resuming stored speed

Maintaining speed, storing speed, and accelerating

Press lever to resistance point, arrow **1**:
The speed currently being driven is maintained and stored. The display **1** in the speedometer, see below, indicates this regulated speed. Every time you press the lever, the vehicle's speed increases by roughly 1 mph/1 km/h.

Press lever to resistance point for a longer time:
The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system maintains and stores your current speed as soon as you release the lever.

Press the lever beyond the resistance point:
Increase speed each time to the next fives place on the mph speedometer or to the next tens place on the km/h speedometer.

If, on a downhill grade, the engine's braking effect is not sufficient, the controlled speed can be exceeded. Speed can drop on uphill grades if the engine output is insufficient.

Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

Pull the lever, arrow **2**:
Functions are the same as **1**, only the vehicle speed is reduced.

Interrupting cruise control

Press the lever up or down, arrow **3**.

In addition, cruise control is automatically deactivated:

- When the brakes are applied
- When the clutch pedal is depressed or the automatic transmission/SMG is shifted into position N
- When the DSC comes on

Resuming stored speed

Press button **4**:
The stored speed is resumed and maintained.

Deactivating system

When the ignition is switched off, the system is deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Stored desired speed

2 Selected desired speed appears briefly

Active cruise control*

The concept

With active cruise control, you can select a desired speed which is not only automatically maintained when driving on open roadways, but also varied to maintain a selected distance setting as slower traffic is encountered.

Active cruise control is a technological advance over the familiar cruise control and is a welcome relief from the constant adjustment of speed that can accompany driving in traffic on freeways or other high-speed thoroughfares. Especially on longer trips, the system can reduce fatigue and tension, while increasing your enjoyment of driving. Please use it safely and responsibly.

In addition to holding a steady cruising speed, if you encounter slower vehicles ahead, active cruise control will, within the scope of given possibilities, adjust your vehicle's speed automatically so that you can flow with the traffic without having to make constant adjustments. If, for example, while cruising at the selected speed, you begin to approach a slower vehicle ahead of you in the same lane, the system will reduce your vehicle's speed to the same as that of the vehicle ahead to maintain your selected distance setting between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. You can vary the distance, which is additionally speed-dependent. Based on your selected distance setting, the system automatically decreases the throttle setting and lightly applies the brakes if necessary. The vehicle brake lamps will automatically illuminate to signal a following driver to take action. In addition, it may be necessary for the vehicle or the driver to downshift, depending on the kind of transmission your vehicle is equipped with, to maintain the distance setting selected. If the vehicle ahead speeds up or when the lane ahead becomes clear, your vehicle will accelerate to the speed you have selected by increasing the throttle setting and shifting gears automatically or by the driver as needed. Your selected speed will also be held when driving downhill, however it can be dropped below when driving uphill if the engine output is insufficient.

The minimum desired speed is 20 mph or 30 km/h, and the maximum desired speed 110 mph or 180 km/h.

Active cruise control is not and must not be used as a collision avoidance/warning system.◀

Since this active cruise control system is a new technology and operates differently from conventional cruise control systems which you may be accustomed to, you are strongly urged to read all of the pages relating to this system before use. Pay special attention to the information contained in the Things to know about active cruise control section beginning on page 73.◀

Professional* navigation system

If a navigation DVD is in the drive, refer to page 134, the system adjusts the accelerating and braking behavior of the vehicle to the road you are driving on.

To ensure that the system is informed of the current course of the road, always use the latest navigation DVD if possible.◀

When the vehicle position is unknown, e.g. when you leave the map area, this influence of the navigation system is not available.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Brake pedal feel

- When the system brakes and you also depress the brake pedal, a somewhat different braking feeling results.
- Any noises produced during automatic braking are normal.

Manual transmission

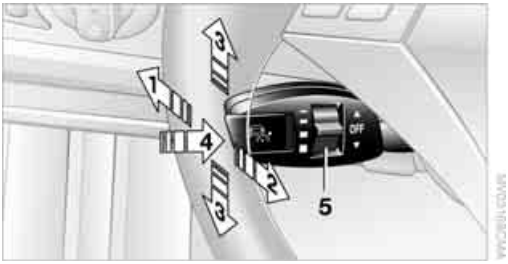
You can shift with the cruise control activated. Shifting information is provided or the system deactivates itself if you drive at very high or very low engine speeds for a longer period.

SMG

In the Sequential mode, shifting information is provided or the system deactivates itself if you drive at very high engine speeds for a longer period.

In the Drive mode the SMG acts similarly to an automatic transmission in the D position.

Operating active cruise control



1 Store and increase desired speed

2 Store and decrease desired speed

3 Deactivate system, refer to page 71

4 Resume stored desired speed and distance, refer to page 71

5 Select distance to vehicle driving ahead, refer to page 71

Maintaining current speed

Briefly press lever, arrow **1**, or briefly pull lever, arrow **2**, at a driving speed of more than approx. 20 mph or 30 km/h.

The speed currently being driven is stored and maintained. It is indicated on the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

Increasing desired speed

Press or briefly press the lever to the resistance point or beyond, arrow **1**, until the desired speed is displayed.
The speed then displayed is stored and reached on a clear road.

- Each time the lever is briefly pressed up to the resistance point, the desired speed increases by approx. 1 mph or 1 km/h.
- Each time the lever is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed increases to the next fives place on the mph speedometer or the next tens place on the km/h speedometer.

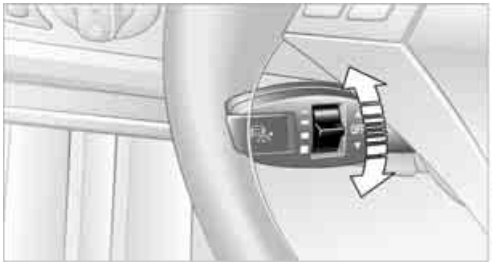
Decreasing desired speed

Pull the lever, arrow **2**, until the desired speed is displayed.

These functions are operated in the same manner as increasing your desired speed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Selecting distance



- Downward:
  Increase distance.
- Upward:
  Decrease distance.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Distance 1

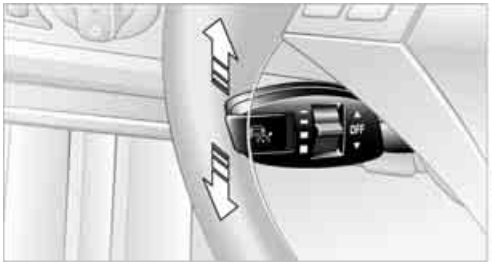
Distance 2

Distance 3
This distance is set when the system is used for the first time after starting the engine.

Distance 4

Use good judgment to select the appropriate following distance given road conditions, traffic, applicable laws and driving recommendations for a safe following distance.◀

Deactivating system



Press the lever up or down. The displays in the instrument cluster disappear.

You also deactivate the system when you brake, shift very slowly or into neutral, or engage selector lever position N. In addition, the system is deactivated automatically:

- When you activate DTC Dynamic Traction Control
- When you deactivate DSC Dynamic Stability Control
- When the system does not recognize any objects for a longer time, e.g. on infrequently traveled roads without a shoulder or guard rails, or if the radar sensor is covered with dirt, refer to page 72
- When the speed is reduced to below 20 mph/30 km/h due to a traffic situation

The system deactivates automatically when the speed is set to below 20 mph/30 km/h. A signal sounds and a message appears on the Control Display. The active intervention of the driver is required, otherwise accidents can occur.◀

Resuming stored desired speed and distance

Press button **4**.
The displays appear in the instrument cluster.

When you switch off the ignition, the stored desired speed is deleted.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Stored desired speed

2 Lights up yellow: vehicle driving ahead is detected

Flashes red, a signal sounds: the system cannot establish the distance, apply the brakes yourself

Flashes yellow: driving stability control systems intervene, the active cruise control is deactivated

3 Selected distance to vehicle driving ahead: lights up as soon as the system is activated

4 Selected desired speed appears briefly

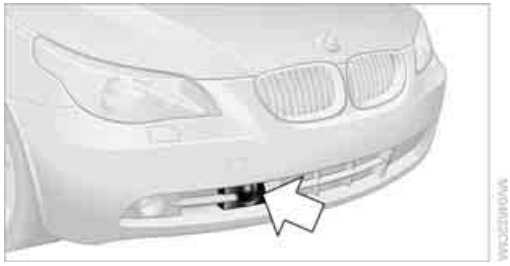
If the display ACC --- mph/km/h briefly appears in the instrument cluster, it might be that conditions necessary for operation are not currently being met. To call up Check Control messages, refer to page 80.◀

Warning lamps

The display **2** flashes red and a signal sounds.
The system requests that you intervene by braking or with an evasive maneuver. The active cruise control cannot automatically restore the distance to the vehicle driving ahead.
However, this display cannot relieve the driver of the responsibility for adjusting the desired speed and driving style to the traffic conditions.

The display **2** flashes yellow.
Automatic intervention by ABS or DSC. The active cruise control intervenes by braking until you take over actively.

Radar sensor

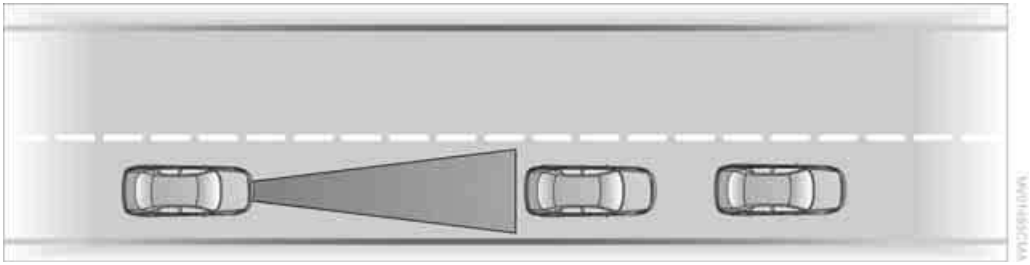


Heavy rain, dirt, snow or ice can restrict the detection of vehicles driving ahead. If necessary, clean the front radar sensor under the bumper. Exercise particular care when removing snow and ice.

If the sensor is not aligned properly, the active cruise control cannot be activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Things to know about active cruise control



As with conventional cruise control systems, active cruise control in no way diminishes or substitutes for the driver's own personal responsibility, alertness and awareness in adjusting speed, braking or otherwise controlling the vehicle. The driver should decide when to use the system on the basis of road, traffic, visibility, and weather conditions. Active cruise control is intended for use on highway-type roadways where traffic is moving relatively smoothly. Do not use this system in city driving; heavy traffic such as during rush hour; on curvy, winding roads, slippery roads or roads with sharp curves such as highway off-ramps; during inclement weather such as snow, strong rain or fog; or when entering interchanges, service/parking areas or toll booths. It is also important to regulate your vehicle's speed and distance setting within applicable legal limits. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary, especially when the system is actively following a vehicle in front of you.◀

Always remember that the range and ability of the system does have physical limitations. It will not apply the brakes or decelerate your vehicle when there is a slow-moving vehicle, stopped vehicle or stationary object ahead of you, as for example, at a traffic light or a parked vehicle. Also, the system does not react to oncoming traffic, pedestrians or other types of potential traffic such as a rider on horseback. It is also possible that the system may not detect smaller moving objects such as motorcycles or bicycles. Be especially alert when encountering any of these situations as the system will neither automatically brake, nor provide a warning to you. Also, be aware that every decrease in the distance setting allows your vehicle to come closer to a vehicle in front of you and requires a heightened amount of alertness.◀

If while your vehicle is actively following a vehicle in front of you and the vehicle ahead speeds up or the lane ahead becomes clear, then your vehicle will accelerate to the speed you have selected. Be aware that changing to a clear, unobstructed lane will also result in your vehicle accelerating.

Be certain to deactivate the system when you pull into an exit lane for a highway off-ramp.◀

Also, vehicles traveling in a staggered manner on a highway may cause a delay in the system's reaction to a vehicle in front of you or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in the lane next to you. Always be ready to take action or apply the brakes if necessary.

Active cruise control can only decelerate the vehicle to approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. If the system reduces vehicle speed below 20 mph/30 km/h or if DSC/ABS is engaged while driving, the system will automatically deactivate.

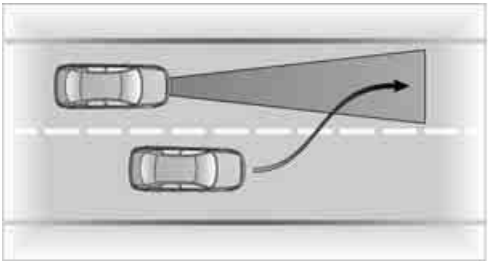
Remember, the system cannot stop your vehicle. In addition, the system is deactivated whenever the driver applies the vehicle brakes, shifts the transmission to neutral/N, or deactivates DSC. After any deactivation, the system will no longer automatically activate the vehicle brakes, which means the driver must intervene and resume manual braking. You should then reactivate the system only when you are fully aware of the prior speed and distance settings.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Active cruise control may brake when you reduce the stored desired speed; however, the driver must constantly monitor traffic and intervene if necessary.

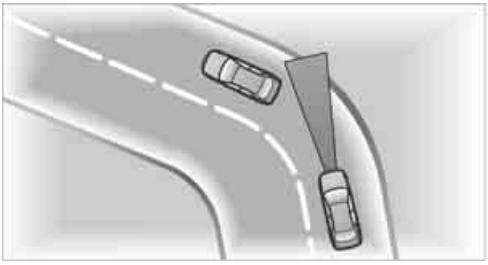
When you switch off the engine or ignition, active cruise control is fully switched off, too, and any settings you have selected are canceled.

Swerving vehicles



When a vehicle moves from an adjacent lane into your lane, active cruise control will not recognize this vehicle until it is fully in your lane ahead of your vehicle.

Behavior in curves



Because of the limited range of the system, it is possible that in curves or on the peaks and valleys of hilly roads, a vehicle ahead may be recognized late, or not at all. Therefore, it is up to the driver to select a speed that is prudent in view of the curves and terrain of the roadway.

In approaching a curve, it is possible that active cruise control would react briefly to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. In addition, the system can sense if your vehicle is in a curve and may not accelerate. If your vehicle decelerates in either case, you can choose to overcome the deceleration by briefly pressing the accelerator pedal.

Driver interventions

Anytime the driver presses down on the accelerator pedal, any automatic braking action by the system is interrupted until the pedal is fully released. After doing this, release the accelerator and the system again controls your cruising speed and distance setting. While driving with the system activated, resting your foot on the accelerator pedal will cause the system not to brake even if necessary. Be certain that floor mats or other objects on the vehicle floor do not interfere with movement of the accelerator pedal.◀

While active cruise control is capable of braking your vehicle automatically when you approach a slower vehicle ahead, it is important to be aware that the ability of the system to apply the brakes is also limited, e.g. when you reduce your desired speed sharply. The system cannot stop your vehicle. It uses only a portion of braking system capacity and does not utilize the full capacity of the vehicle braking system. Therefore, the system cannot decrease your speed due to large differences in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Example: when you approach a vehicle traveling at a much lower speed than your own speed, such as approaching a toll booth or when a much slower vehicle cuts in front of you at close range.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Everything under control

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock

1 Time, outside temperature and date

2 Odometer and trip odometer

3 Press button:

- ▷ with ignition switched on, trip odometer is reset
- ▷ with the ignition switched off, time, outside temperature and odometer are briefly displayed

From radio readiness the outside temperature and the time are displayed.

Date retrieval:
Press CHECK button on turn signal lever, refer to page 81.

Time and date setting, refer to page 83.

You can set the unit of measure °F or °C on the Control Display, refer to Units of measure on page 85.

Outside temperature warning

If the display drops to +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. There is an increased danger of ice.

⚠ Even at temperatures above +37 °F / +3 °C ice can form. Therefore, drive carefully, e.g. on bridges and sections of road in the shade, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀

Tachometer

The white-striped advance warning field, arrow **1**, changes depending on the engine temperature. With increasing engine temperature the advance warning field becomes correspondingly smaller. Avoid allowing the engine speed to rise as far as the orange warning field whenever possible.

Be sure to avoid engine speeds in the red warning field, arrow **2**. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine become too hot, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level, refer to page 219.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Energy Control

Displays the current fuel consumption. This allows you to see whether your current driving style is conducive to fuel economy with minimum exhaust emissions.

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 18.5 gallons/ 70 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx. 2.1 gallons/8 liters.
550i: approx. 2.6 gallons/10 liters reserve capacity.
You will find information on refueling on page 206.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Reserve

After the reserve quantity has been reached, a message briefly appears on the Control Display; the remaining range is shown in the computer. Below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message remains on the Control Display.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Computer

Displays in instrument cluster

To display the information, press the BC button on the turn signal lever.

The following information is displayed in the specified order:

- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is projected based on the driving style over the last 20 miles/ 30 km.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Average speed

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

To reset average speed: press BC button on turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

To reset average fuel consumption: press BC button on turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

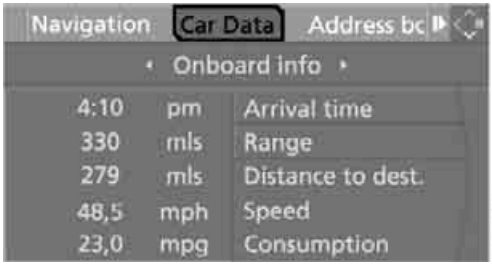
For different routes

You can display the average speed and average consumption for two different routes on the Control Display, refer to the following and to Trip computer*.

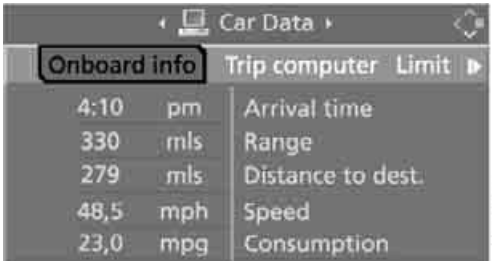
Displays on Control Display

You can also call up the computer via iDrive. For explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.



4. Select "Onboard info" and press the controller.



- Estimated time of arrival at destination and remaining distance:
  - Entering a distance manually in the computer, see below.
  - Entering a destination in the navigation system*, refer to page 134.
- Cruising range
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption

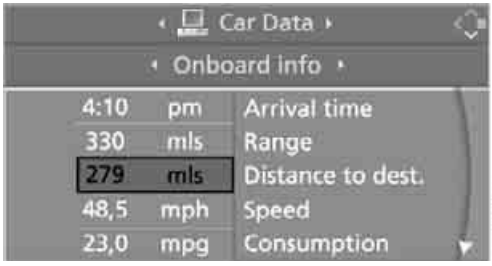
Resetting values

You can reset the values for the average speed and average fuel consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. To confirm your selection, press the controller again.

Entering a distance manually

1. Select "Distance to dest." and press the controller.



2. Turn the controller to select the distance to your destination. If needed, hold it against a slight resistance to enter a larger difference.
3. Press the controller to apply the setting.

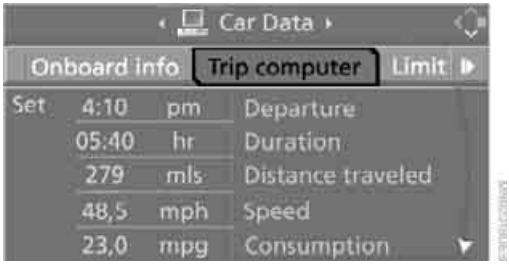
The distance is automatically preset during the destination guidance of the navigation system*.

Trip computer*

The trip computer is suitable, for example, for a vacation trip.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Trip computer" and press the controller.



▷ Departure time
▷ Driving time
▷ Distance traveled
▷ Average speed
▷ Average fuel consumption

Starting or stopping the trip computer, or resetting all values:

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Display options

You can display the computer or the trip computer in the assistance window.

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select "Onboard info" or "Trip computer".
3. Press the controller.

Service requirements

The remaining driving distance and the date for the next maintenance are displayed briefly with the ignition switched on.

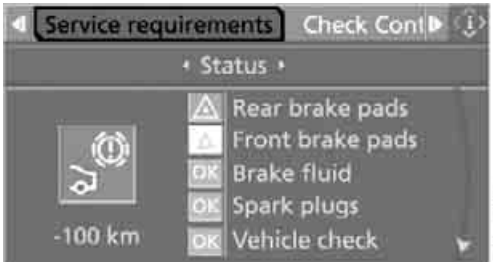
▷ Your BMW Service Advisor can determine your vehicle's current service requirements by reading out the data stored in the remote control.◀

Additional information

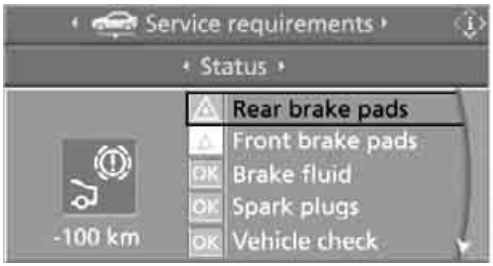
You can select a display of more detailed information on the maintenance scope on the Control Display. For explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG



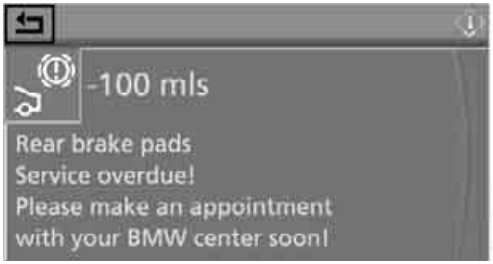
6. Select "Status" and press the controller.



The display shows a list of selected service and maintenance procedures, as well as legally mandated inspections.

You can request more detailed information on every entry.

Select the entry and press the controller.



To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Symbols

OK No service is currently required.

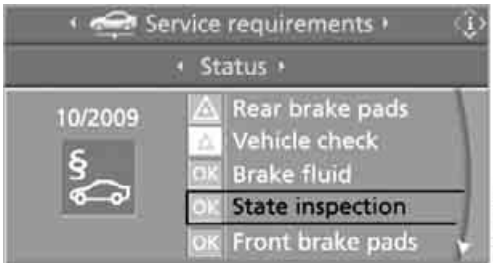
The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please arrange a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

Entering deadlines for legally required inspections*

Make sure the date on the Control Display is set correctly, refer to page 83, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Status" and press the controller.
7. Select "State inspection" and press the controller.



8. Select "Set service date" and press the controller. The month is highlighted.
9. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.

10. Press the controller to apply the setting. The year is highlighted.
11. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

12. Press the controller to apply the setting. The date entry is stored.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors functions in the vehicle and issues a message if there is a malfunction in the monitored systems. This kind of Check Control message consists of indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster, and if necessary an acoustic signal and text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

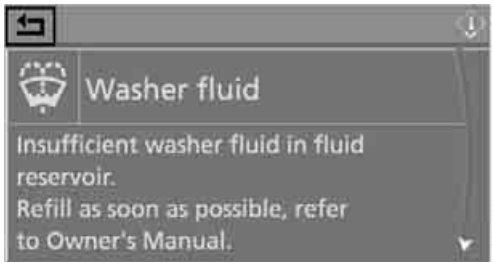
Indicator and warning lamps

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

⚠ means that a Check Control message has been generated. The symbol continues to be visible even when the Check Control message disappears after a short time. The warning lamps and text messages are stored and can be displayed later, also refer to page 81.

Explanatory text messages

Text message at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

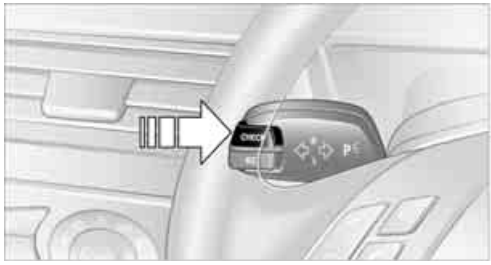


You can display additional information on most Check Control messages later, e.g. on the cause of the malfunction and on corresponding need for action, see below.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

Exit the displayed information:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the CHECK button on turn signal lever.

Some Check Control messages remain visible until the malfunctions have been rectified. They cannot be hidden. If a number of malfunctions

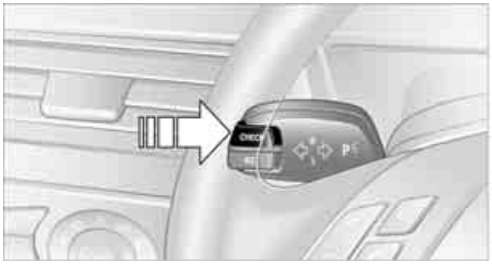
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

occur simultaneously, they are displayed in succession.

Other messages are automatically hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but remain stored.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. Press button longer:
   The first stored message is displayed.



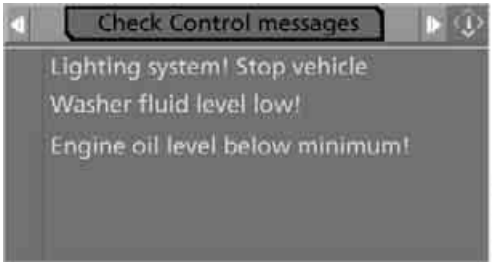
2. Press the button:
   When the button is pressed again, a different message is displayed.

Displaying additional information later

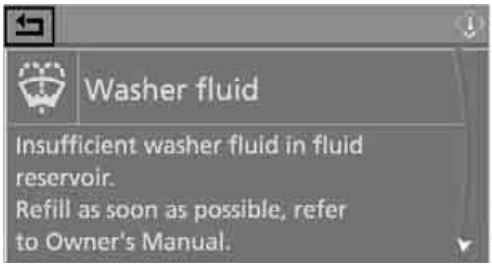
iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Info sources" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Service" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Check Control messages" is selected and press the controller.

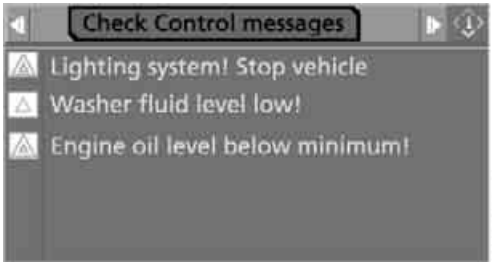


6. Select a text message and press the controller.



To exit the display:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Indication of malfunction urgency



Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the stored Check Control messages are also displayed with the following symbols:

No malfunctions are present in the monitored systems.

Malfunctions are present in the monitored systems. Depending on the malfunction, supplementary information is shown on the Control Display.

The symbols also indicate the status of the service requirements display, refer to page 78.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Displays after completion of trip

Malfunction reports generated during the trip are shown consecutively when you switch off the ignition.

Before the display disappears, you can display the messages once again. Press the CHECK button for approx. 2 seconds. If several messages are present, you can continue to press the CHECK button to view them in succession.

The display goes out

- automatically after a brief period
- when you press the CHECK button again for approx. 2 seconds

Speed limit

You can enter a speed and a Check Control message indicates when you have reached this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing limit

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Limit" and press the controller.

5. Select the speed value and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the limit. If needed, hold it against a slight resistance to enter a larger difference.
7. Press the controller to apply the setting. The limit is automatically activated.

Applying your current speed as limit

Select "Select current speed" and press the controller. The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating limit

Select "On" and press the controller.
☑ Limit is automatically activated.

Stopwatch

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Stopwatch" and press the controller.

Starting, stopping or resetting

- Select "Start" and press the controller. The stopwatch starts at the displayed time.
- Select "Reset" and press the controller. The stopwatch is reset and it restarts if it was running beforehand.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

▷ Select "Stop" and press the controller. This stops the timer.

Taking an intermediate time reading

Select "Interim time" and press the controller. The interim time appears below the ongoing primary stopwatch count.

▷ All of the remaining functions remain available at all times while the stopwatch is running. The stopwatch continues operation in the background.◀

Settings on Control Display

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

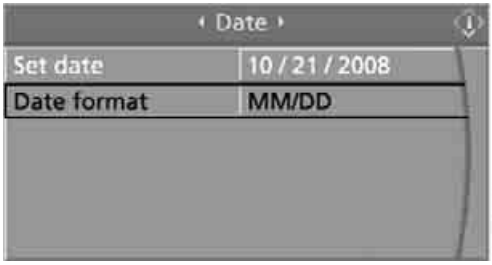
1. Press the **MENU** button once or twice until the start menu appears.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

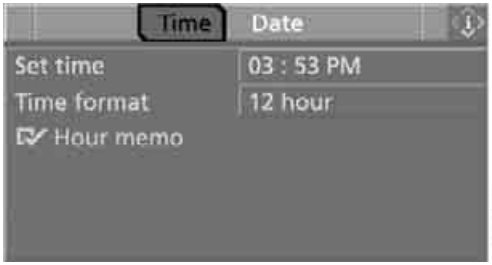
Setting time

1. Turn the controller until "Time / Date" is selected and press the controller.

2. Move the controller once to the front if necessary to change to the first field from the top.

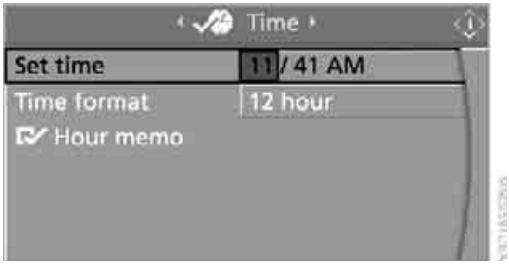


3. Turn the controller until "Time" is selected and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller until "Set time" is selected and press the controller.



Making settings

1. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
2. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

The changed time is stored.

Switching on hour signal*

You will hear three tones just before each full hour.

Select "Hour memo" and press the controller. The hour signal is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting time format

1. Select "Time format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting date

1. Select "Date" and press the controller.

2. Select "Set date" and press the controller. The first section of the date display is highlighted, in this case the month.
3. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
4. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is highlighted.
5. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the date is stored.

Changing date format

1. Select "Date format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Brightness" is selected and press the controller.

6. If necessary, move the controller to the right to select "Display".
7. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

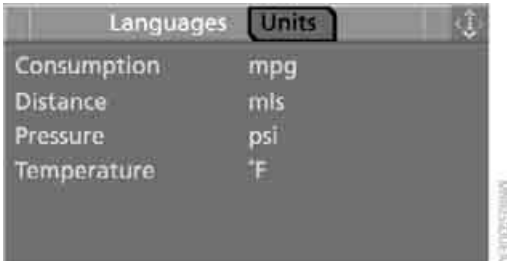
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Units of measure

You can change the units of measure for consumption, distances, temperature and pressure.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Units" is selected and press the controller.



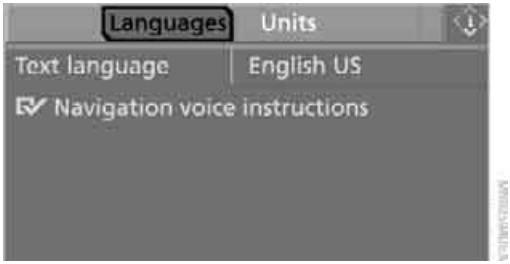
6. Select the menu item to be set and press the controller.
7. Select the desired unit of measure and press the controller.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Language on Control Display

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Text language" and press the controller. You can change the language of the text displays.
7. Select and activate the desired language by pressing the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Technology for comfort, convenience and safety

PDC Park Distance Control*

The concept

The PDC assists you when you are parking. Acoustic signals and an optical display* alert you to the approach of an object from behind your vehicle. To measure the distance, there are four ultrasonic sensors in each bumper. The range of these sensors is approx. 7 ft/2 m. However, an acoustic warning first sounds for the sensors at the front and at the two rear corners at approx. 24 in/60 cm, and for the center rear sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

PDC is a parking aid that can indicate objects when they are approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed, otherwise the physical circumstances would mean that the system warning was too late.◀

Automatic activation

The system starts to operate automatically approx. 1 second after you select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position R with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Wait this short period before driving.

Manual activation

Press button, the LED lights up.

Manual deactivation

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

After driving approx. 165 ft/50 m or at over approx. 20 mph/30 km/h, the system is switched off and the LED goes out. You can reactivate the system manually as needed.

Signal tones

When nearing an object, the position is correspondingly indicated by an interval tone. Thus, an object detected to the left rear of the vehicle will be indicated by a signal tone from the left rear speaker, etc. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ if you remain in front of an object that was only detected by one of the corner sensors
- ▷ if you drive parallel to a wall

Malfunction

The LED in the button flashes and a message appears on the Control Display. PDC is malfunctioning. Have the system checked.

To prevent this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. Do not spray the sensors with high-pressure cleaners for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm to them.

PDC with visual warning*

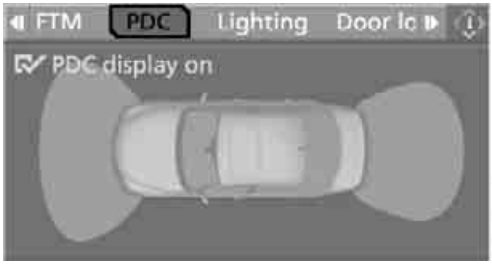
You can also have the system show distances to objects on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already shown there before a signal tone sounds. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "Vehicle / Tires" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "PDC" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "PDC display on" and press the controller.
   The PDC screen is activated.

The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limits

Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstructions always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. The system is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with tow bars and trailer couplings, or thin and wedge-shaped objects etc. Low objects already displayed, e.g. curbs, can also disappear from the detection area of the sensors again before or after a continuous tone already sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected.
Loud sources of sound, inside and outside the vehicle, could drown out the PDC signal tone.◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW is equipped with an extended array of systems designed to enhance and maintain vehicle stability under extreme conditions.

ABS Antilock Brake System

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

The ABS is operational every time you start the engine. Braking safely refer to page 127.

CBC Cornering Brake Control

When braking during curves or when braking during a lane change, driving stability and steering response are improved further.

Electronic brake-force distribution

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

DBC Dynamic Brake Control

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

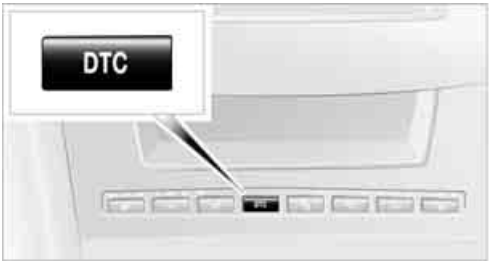
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

DSC prevents traction loss in the driving wheels when starting off and accelerating. DSC also identifies unstable driving conditions, such as a loss of traction at the rear of the vehicle or sliding of the vehicle in its front wheels. In these cases, DSC helps the vehicle maintain a safe course within physical limits by reducing engine output and through braking actions in the individual wheels.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin further by taking risks.◀

Deactivating DSC



Press the button until the DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds. DTC Dynamic Traction Control and DSC are deactivated together. Stabilizing and drive output promoting actions are no longer executed. In addition, the stability promoting intervention of the active steering* is deactivated, refer to page 95.

A message appears on the Control Display. Please note any supplementary information that appears there.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC

Press the button; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

For better control

The indicator lamp flashes:
DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up:
DSC is deactivated.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

DTC is a version of DSC in which the drive output is optimized for particular road conditions, e.g. unplowed snow-covered roads. The system assures the maximal drive output, but with reduced driving stability. It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- When driving on snowy inclines, in slush, or on unplowed, snow-covered road surfaces
- When rocking a stuck vehicle free or starting off in deep snow or on loose ground
- When driving with snow chains*

Activating DTC

Press the button briefly; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

For better control

The indicator lamp flashes:
DTC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up:
DTC is activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Deactivating DTC

Press the button again; the DTC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

xDrive on 525xi, 530xi

xDrive is the 4-wheel drive system of your BMW. The combined effects of xDrive and DSC further optimize the traction and dynamic driving characteristics. The 4-wheel drive system xDrive variably distributes the drive torque to the front and rear axle depending on the driving situation and prevailing road conditions.

HDC Hill Descent Control on 525xi, 530xi

The concept

HDC is a system for driving downhill in steep terrain. This system reduces vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients, thus allowing you to maintain even better control of your BMW under these conditions. The vehicle moves at approximately twice walking speed without active intervention from the driver.

HDC is available for activation at vehicle speeds below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h. When driving down steep hills with a speed below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h, the vehicle reduces speed automatically down to approximately double walking speed, approx. 7 mph/12 km/h, and then maintains this speed at a constant.

You can use the accelerator or brakes to vary this automatically controlled speed within a range extending from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h to 15 mph/25 km/h.
You can specify a target speed within the same range by using the lever of the cruise control.

Activating HDC

You can activate HDC:

- ▷ with the programmable buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 53
- ▷ using iDrive

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "HDC" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "HDC on" and press the controller.

HDC is shown in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle is automatically braked, a message is displayed on the Control Display for approx. 20 seconds.

Deactivating HDC

When you use the programmable buttons on the steering wheel or via iDrive, the HDC display goes out.

HDC is automatically deactivated in the following situations:

- ▷ Above approx. 37 mph/60 km/h
- ▷ After switching off the ignition

Using HDC

Manual transmission:
Use HDC in low gears and reverse gear.

Automatic transmission:
You can use HDC in every drive position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Display for target speed

2 HDC display

Malfunction in driving-stability control systems

The warning lamp for the brake system lights up, together with the Indicator and warning lamps for ABS, DSC and Tire Pressure Control or Flat Tire Monitor. A message appears on the Control Display. The driving-stability control systems have failed. Conventional braking efficiency remains available without limitations. While you may continue, you should remember to proceed cautiously and drive defensively while avoiding full brake applications. In addition, the Tire Pressure Control or the Flat Tire Monitor has also failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

The DSC indicator lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. A malfunction has occurred in the DSC and DTC. The stabilizing actions are no longer available. The vehicle remains operational. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

The brake system warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. DBC has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

Dynamic Drive*

The concept

Dynamic Drive minimizes body roll and optimizes vehicle stability during cornering and evasive maneuvers.

Dynamic Drive is based on active stabilizers on the front and rear axles. Suspension compliance adapts to suit driving conditions, varying from performance-oriented during cornering to smooth and comfort-oriented when the vehicle is proceeding in a straight line. During vehicle operation, the system continuously runs through closed-loop control cycles lasting only fractions of a second.

The system assumes operational status each time you start the engine.

Sports Wagon: self-leveling suspension

Malfunction

The warning lamp for self-leveling suspension lights up yellow and a message is shown on the Control Display. A malfunction has occurred in the self-leveling suspension. Stop and check the vehicle. If it is considerably lower at the rear than at the front, and possibly also on one side – rear left compared to rear right –, go to the nearest BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Drive with appropriate caution in the meantime. The vehicle has reduced ground clearance and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Even if the position of the vehicle is normal, go to the nearest BMW center or a

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM*

The concept

The Flat Tire Monitor keeps track of the inflation pressures in the tires as you drive. The system provides an alert whenever the inflation pressure drops significantly in relation to the pressure in another tire.

In the event of a pressure loss, the rolling radius and therefore the rotation speed of the wheels change. This change is detected and is reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be initialized for the correct tire inflation pressure.

The initialization must be repeated after each time the tire inflation pressure is corrected and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

The Flat Tire Monitor cannot indicate sudden severe tire damage caused by outside factors and does not detect a natural, even pressure drop in all four tires.◀

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- ▷ System has not been initialized
- ▷ Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- ▷ Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ Driving with snow chains*

When you are driving with the compact wheel* the Flat Tire Monitor is unable to function.

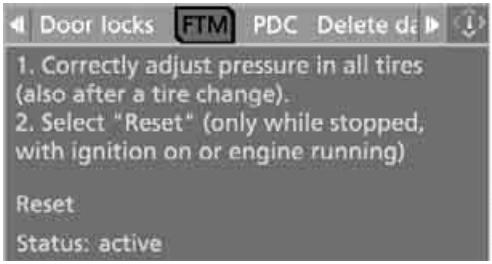
Initializing system

The initialization finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically. Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains* or compact wheel*.◀

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "FTM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

9. Start to drive.
   The message "resetting FTM ..." is displayed.

The initialization finishes during driving. Then the message "Status: active" appears on the Control Display again.

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamp lights up red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Identify damaged tire.

   If identification is not possible, contact a BMW center.◀

3. Replace the damaged wheel, refer to Changing wheels on page 226.

Run-flat tires*

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires, refer to page 213, do not continue driving. Continuing to drive with a flat tire could cause severe accidents.◀

2. At the next opportunity, check the air pressure in all four tires.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. The system must then be initialized.◀

3. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guide values:
   - With a light load:
     1 to 2 persons without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - With a medium load:
     2 persons, cargo bay full, or
     4 persons without luggage:
     approx. 94 miles/150 km
   - With a full load:
     4 or more persons, cargo bay full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibrations or loud noises occur while the vehicle is being driven, this can indicate final failure of the damaged tire. Reduce speed and stop at a suitable location as soon as possible, otherwise pieces of the tire could become detached and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, but instead contact your BMW center.◀

TPM Tire Pressure Monitor*

The concept

TPM checks the tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system reports when the tire inflation pressure has dropped considerably in one or several tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Always use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise fault-free operation of the system is not ensured.

Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

TPM cannot announce sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences.◀

The system does not function properly if it has not been reset, e.g. a flat tire is reported despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot display a flat tire if a wheel has been mounted without TPM electronics, e.g. a compact wheel, or if TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Status display on Control Display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

TPM takes the fact that the tire pressure changes during driving into account. A correction is only required if requested by TPM with the color.

Green

The tire pressure matches the learned set state.

"TPM active" is displayed on the Control Display.

One wheel is yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels are yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire.

Reasons for this can be:

- TPM is being reset
- Temporary interference due to systems or devices which use the same radio frequency
- Malfunction

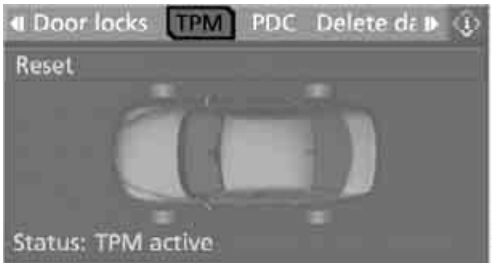
Resetting system

Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

Resetting finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically.Do not reset the system when driving with a compact wheel*.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "TPM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

9. Start to drive.
   The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After a few minutes of driving, the set tire inflation pressures in the tires are applied as the set values to be monitored. Resetting finishes during driving. The tires are shown in green on the Control Display and "Status: TPM active" is displayed again.

▷ If a flat tire is detected during resetting and applying the tire inflation pressures, all tires are shown in yellow on the Control Display. The message "Tire low!" is displayed.◀

Message with low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether your vehicle is equipped with standard tires or run-flat tires.

   ▷ You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 213.◀

Standard tires

1. If all four wheels are shown in yellow, identify the damaged tire on the vehicle.
2. Replace the damaged wheel or wheels, refer to Changing wheels on page 226.

In contrast to a compact wheel, a spare wheel is equipped with the necessary TPM electronics and also monitored after mounting and after resetting the system.

Have the tire replaced by a BMW center or a workshop informed on handling TPM which works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Run-flat tires*

1. Cautiously reduce speed to below 50 mph/80 km/h. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   ⚠ If the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires, refer to page 213, do not continue driving. Continuing to drive with a flat tire could cause severe accidents.◀
2. In the event of complete tire pressure loss, 0 psi/0 kPa, you can estimate the possible distance for continued driving on the basis of the following guide values:
   - ▷ With a light load:
     1 to 2 persons without luggage:
     approx. 155 miles/250 km
   - ▷ With a medium load:
     2 persons, cargo bay full, or 4 persons without luggage:
     approx. 95 miles/150 km
   - ▷ With a full load:
     4 or more persons, cargo bay full:
     approx. 30 miles/50 km

⚠ Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. In the event of pressure loss, vehicle handling changes. This includes reduced tracking stability in braking, extended braking distance and altered natural steering characteristics.
If unusual vibrations or loud noises occur while the vehicle is being driven, this can indicate final failure of the damaged tire. Reduce speed and

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

stop at a suitable location as soon as possible, otherwise pieces of the tire could become detached and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, but instead contact your BMW center.◀

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. The tires are shown in gray on the Control Display and a message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.

A message like this is displayed in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of a malfunction; have the system checked.
- ▷ If a wheel is mounted without TPM electronics
- ▷ If TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Active steering*

The concept

The active steering is a system that actively varies the steering angle of the front wheels in relation to the steering wheel movements.

When you are driving in the low road speed range, e.g. in a town or when parking, the steering angle increases, i.e. the steering becomes very direct. In the higher speed range, on the other hand, the steering angle is reduced more and more. This improves the handling capability of your BMW over the entire speed range.

In critical situations, the system can make targeted corrections to the steering angle provided by the driver and thus stabilize the vehicle before the driver intervenes. This stabilizing intervention is simultaneously deactivated when DSC is switched off, refer to page 88.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Malfunction

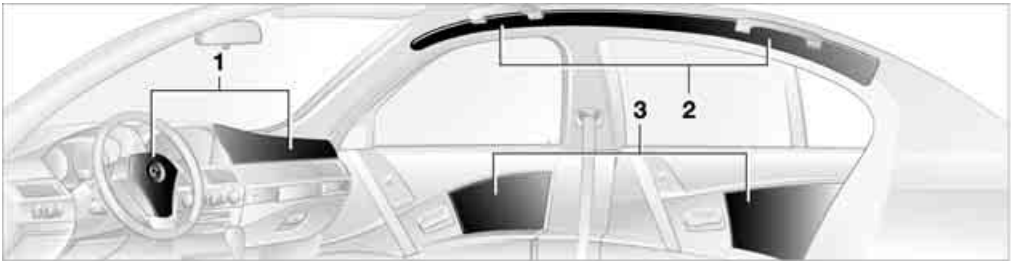
The warning lamp lights up yellow and a message is shown on the Control Display. The active steering is no longer operational. At low speeds, greater steering wheel movements are required, whereas at higher speeds, the vehicle reacts more sensitively to steering wheel movements. The stability-promoting intervention can also be deactivated. Proceed cautiously and drive defensively. Have the system checked.

Brake force display

On the left: normal braking.

On the right: heavy braking.

Airbags



The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Head airbags

3 Side airbags in front and rear

Protective action

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 45.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head.

The airbags are deliberately not triggered in every impact situation, e.g. less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way. Do not attempt to remove the airbag restraint system from the vehicle. Do not modify or tamper with either the wiring or the individual components in the airbag system. This category includes the upholstery in the center of the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, the doors and the roof pillars along with the sides of the headliner. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel. Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.
In the event of malfunctions, deactivation, or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal, and disposal of airbag generators executed only by a BMW center

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel and has the required explosives licenses. Unprofessional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired airbag activation, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warnings and information on the airbags is also provided on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags

The occupation of the seat is detected by evaluating the impression on the occupied seat surface of the front passenger seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly by the system.

▷ The current status of the front passenger airbag, i.e. deactivated or activated, is indicated by the indicator lamp over the interior rearview mirror, refer to Operating state of front passenger airbags in the following.◀

⚠ Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, observe the safety information and handling instructions under Transporting children safely refer to page 55.
The front and side airbags on the front passenger side can be deactivated for teenagers and adults in certain seat positions; then the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. In these cases, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired status cannot be produced by changing the seat position, transport the corresponding person on the rear seat. Do not fit seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items onto the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not lay objects under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise a correct evaluation of the occupied seat surface cannot be ensured.◀

Operating state of front passenger airbags

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating status of the front and side airbags on the front passenger side depending on the seat occupation. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

- ▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a child restraint system intended for the purpose is properly detected on the seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient height is detected on the seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when the seat is empty.
  However, the front and side airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Operational readiness of airbag system

From radio readiness, refer to page 59, the warning lamp lights up briefly, indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the safety belt tensioners.

Airbag system malfunction

- ▷ Warning lamp does not light up from radio readiness.
- ▷ Warning lamp lights up continuously.

⚠ Have the airbag system checked immediately in case of a malfunction, otherwise there is a danger that the airbag system may not respond in the expected manner in an accident despite an impact of corresponding intensity.◀

Head-Up Display*

The concept

With the Head-Up Display important information is projected into the driver's field of view, e.g. navigation instructions. This enables you to take in this information without looking away from the road.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

1 Navigation instructions

2 Display
- ▷ Cruise control
- ▷ Active cruise control

3 Speed

Selecting displays

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
6. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
7. Select desired information of Head-Up Display.

8. Press the controller.
   The information is shown on the Head-Up Display.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting brightness

The brightness of the display is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting. With the low beams switched on, the brightness can also be adjusted with the knurled wheel of the instrument lighting.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
6. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Brightness" is selected and press the controller.

7. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

The visibility of the displays in the Head-Up Display is influenced by:

- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters
- ▷ Certain seating positions
- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-Up Display
- ▷ Wet road surface and unfavorable lighting conditions

If the image is distorted, please have the basic setting checked at a BMW center.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system. The shape of the windshield complies with the requirements of the Head-Up Display to enable a precise display. A film in the windshield prevents the double images from being displayed. Windshield replacement should be carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Care instructions

You can find everything you need to know on this topic by consulting the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Only clean the cover of the Head-Up Display with a soft, lint-free cloth or with a display cleaning cloth, otherwise damage may result.◀

BMW Night Vision*

The concept

BMW Night Vision is a driver assistance system that is designed to provide enhanced vision for certain objects at night. This can be especially helpful for detecting people and larger animals. When objects are detected, the driver may be able to take appropriate action sooner. For example, the driver may identify and detect the presence of persons or animals in the road ahead or off to the sides and can be more alert, slow down or stop, blow the horn etc. The driver can decide which actions are appropriate and then react accordingly.

A certain area in front of the vehicle is viewed by an infrared camera and a generated image is shown on the Control Display. The resulting thermal image shows the relative heat radiation of the objects present in the camera's field of view. Warmer objects appear brighter and cooler objects appear darker. Contrast is dependent on the temperature difference between the objects and the background and on the amount of heat radiation of the object itself. As a result, it is quite possible that a person is not continually recognizable as a person in shape, since the thermal radiation can be affected by different clothing which blocks heat loss. Objects with little temperature difference to the surrounding area, or little heat radiation are less noticeable, for example in cold weather.

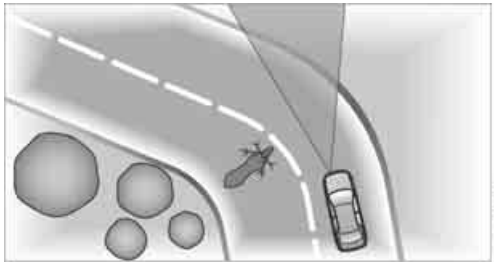
Any improvement in detection depends on many factors such as the object size and temperature compared to the surroundings, or other nearby objects, the visual recognition skills of the driver, weather conditions, and other factors.

Driving hints

With the system active, periodically but briefly, glance at the thermal image on the Control Display to notice objects that could be people or larger animals. The glance should be similar to glancing at the rear view mirror. Do not stare at the image for long periods while driving, as this will remove attention from the road. If you notice an object of interest ahead, be prepared to slow down or stop, blow the horn, or take other appropriate action.

System limits

The system is designed to supplement but not replace forward vision through the windshield. The driver is responsible for safe driving at night. BMW Night Vision is not designed to be used as a continuous viewing window for driving at night.



No system, no matter how sophisticated, can operate without limitations. BMW Night Vision operation is subject to physical and environmental limitations that will reduce the ability of the system to detect and display a clear thermal image. Some of the situations in which these limitations can occur are:

- on steep hilltops or depressions and in tight curves
- in tunnels, as the contrast is inherently low
- when the camera lens is dirty

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

- in dense fog, heavy rain or snowfall
- when displaying very hot objects such as transformers, car exhausts etc.
- when the image briefly freezes during normal system adjustment.

BMW Night Vision's potential benefits can be limited by the driving style of the driver, the size and relative temperature of the detected objects, dirt or contamination on the camera lens, adverse weather like snow, rain or fog, and other factors not mentioned here. It will always be the driver's responsibility to drive at a speed and in a manner that recognizes potential hazards and adjust accordingly.
BMW Night Vision is not a substitute or replacement for driver responsibility or for accommodating the visibility conditions and the traffic situation. The forward view illuminated by the headlamps must always be the basis for making safe driving decisions, otherwise a safety risk will result.◀

Activating BMW Night Vision

1. Turn the light switch to position **2** or **3**, refer to page 103.
2. With low beams switched on:
   - Press the button. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the location of the button may differ somewhat.

   - Press one of the programmable buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 53.

The image will be displayed on the Control Display after a few seconds. Depending on the last mode selected, either the normal or full screen image will be displayed.

Due to the system's need to adjust periodically, a still image is displayed at certain intervals for fractions of a second. This is normal and not an indication of a problem.

To prevent driving without headlamps, at a speed of more than approx. 3 mph/5 km/h and when dark, the thermal image on the Control Display is only shown when the low beams are on.

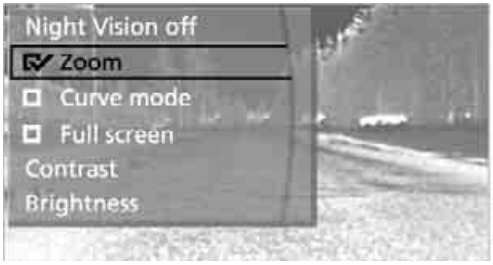
Deactivating BMW Night Vision

- Press the button.
- Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Press the **MENU** button.
- Via iDrive, refer to Selecting settings.

Selecting settings

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Activate BMW Night Vision.
2. Press the controller to display the menu items.



3. Select the menu item and press the controller:
   - "Night Vision off":
     Deactivate BMW Night Vision.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

- "Zoom":
  At higher speeds, the image is zoomed in.
- "Curve mode":
  Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the image sections follows the course of the road to some degree.
- "Full screen":
  The image is shown on the entire Control Display.
- "Contrast":
  The contrast of the screen can be adjusted.
- "Brightness":
  The brightness of the screen can be adjusted.

"Curve mode" can only be activated with the "Zoom" function switched on. With "Full screen" activated, "Curve mode" and "Zoom" cannot be selected.◀

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

To exit the menu:
The image will automatically disappear after approx. 5 seconds.

Cleaning camera

The function of the camera may be affected by heavy rain and fog, dirt, snow or ice on the lens. When this occurs, the displayed image on the Control Display may become gray.

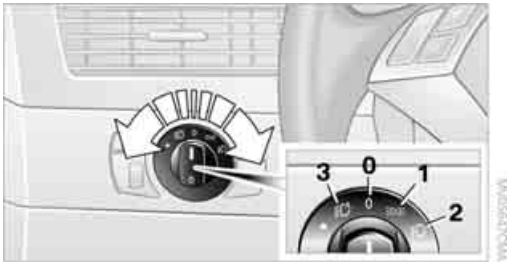
To minimize icing, the camera lens is automatically heated. However, it may be necessary to clean the camera lens manually under severe weather conditions. When doing so, cautiously remove any debris, ice or snow. To avoid damage to the lens, do not use sharp or abrasive instruments to clean ice, snow, or dirt off the lens.

When the windshield is cleaned with the headlamps on, the camera lens area is automatically sprayed as well. Refer to page 66.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Lamps

Parking lamps/low beams



0 Lights off and daytime running lamps*

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lamps*

2 Low beams

3 Automatic headlamp control*, daytime running lamps* and Adaptive Head Light*

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

The parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine. It is preferable to switch on the roadside parking lamps on one side, refer to page 105.◀

Low beams

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

If the light switch remains in position **2**, the exterior lamps are switched off automatically when the driver's door is opened while the ignition is off.

Switch on the parking lamps if required as described under Parking lamps.

Automatic headlamp control*

In switch position **3**, the system activates the low beams and switches them on or off in response to changes in ambient light conditions, for instance, in a tunnel, at dawn and dusk and in case of precipitation. Adaptive Head Light* is active. The LED next to the symbol is illuminated when the low beams are on.

When driving into a tunnel with bright overhead lighting, switching on of the lights may be delayed.
A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

The low beams remain switched on independent of the ambient lighting conditions when you switch on the fog lamps*.◀

If desired, the light switch can be left in position **3**. The exterior lamps are automatically switched off after switching off the vehicle.

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the sensors cannot detect fog of hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low beams manually under these conditions.◀

Pathway lighting

When you activate the headlamp flasher after parking the vehicle and switching off the lamps, the low beams will come on for a brief period. You can set the duration or deactivate the function via iDrive.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the **i** menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Pathway lighting" and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to select the desired duration.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lamps*

If desired, the light switch can remain in position **0**, **1** or **3**.
In positions **0** and **3** the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after the vehicle is switched off. In position **1** the parking lamps light up after the ignition is switched off.

Switch on the parking lamps if required as described under Parking lamps.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lamps*

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Daytime running lamps" and press the controller.

   ✓ The daytime running lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adaptive Head Light*

The concept

Adaptive Head Light is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

Activating Adaptive Head Light

In switch position **3**, the Adaptive Head Light is active and the automatic headlamp control is switched on, refer to page 103.

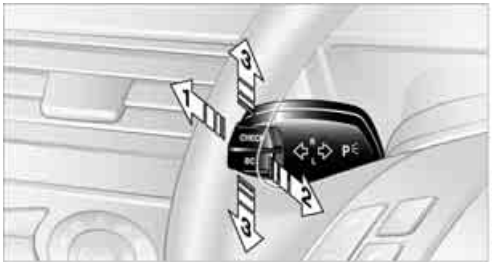
To avoid dazzling oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Head Light is not active when driving in reverse and points toward the passenger side when the vehicle is stopped.

Malfunction

The LED next to the symbol for automatic headlamp control flashes. Adaptive Head Light is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

High beams/ roadside parking lamps



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Roadside parking lamps

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

You also enjoy the option of lighting up just one side of your vehicle when parking:

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the resistance point, arrow **3**.

The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Briefly press the lever in the opposite direction up to the resistance point, arrow **3**.

Fog lamps*

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on for the fog lamps to operate.

The green indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up whenever the fog lamps are on.

The fog lamps are switched off whenever the high beams are switched on.

If the automatic headlamp control is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the fog lamps.◀

Instrument lighting

You can control the lighting intensity by using the knurled wheel.

Interior lamps

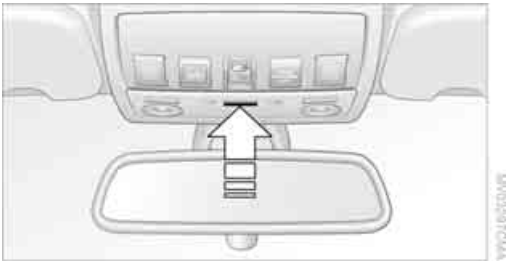
Control of the interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting, cargo bay lamps* and courtesy lamps* is automatic.

With the courtesy lamps, LED lamps are located in the door handles to illuminate the exterior area before the doors.

To protect the battery, all lamps in the vehicle are switched off approx. 15 minutes after radio readiness is switched off, refer to Start/Stop button on page 59.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

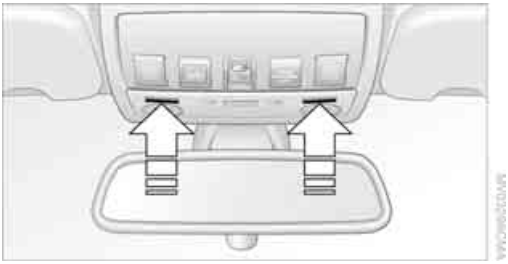
Switching interior lamps on and off manually



Press the button.

If you want the interior lamps to remain off continuously, maintain pressure on the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Reading lamps

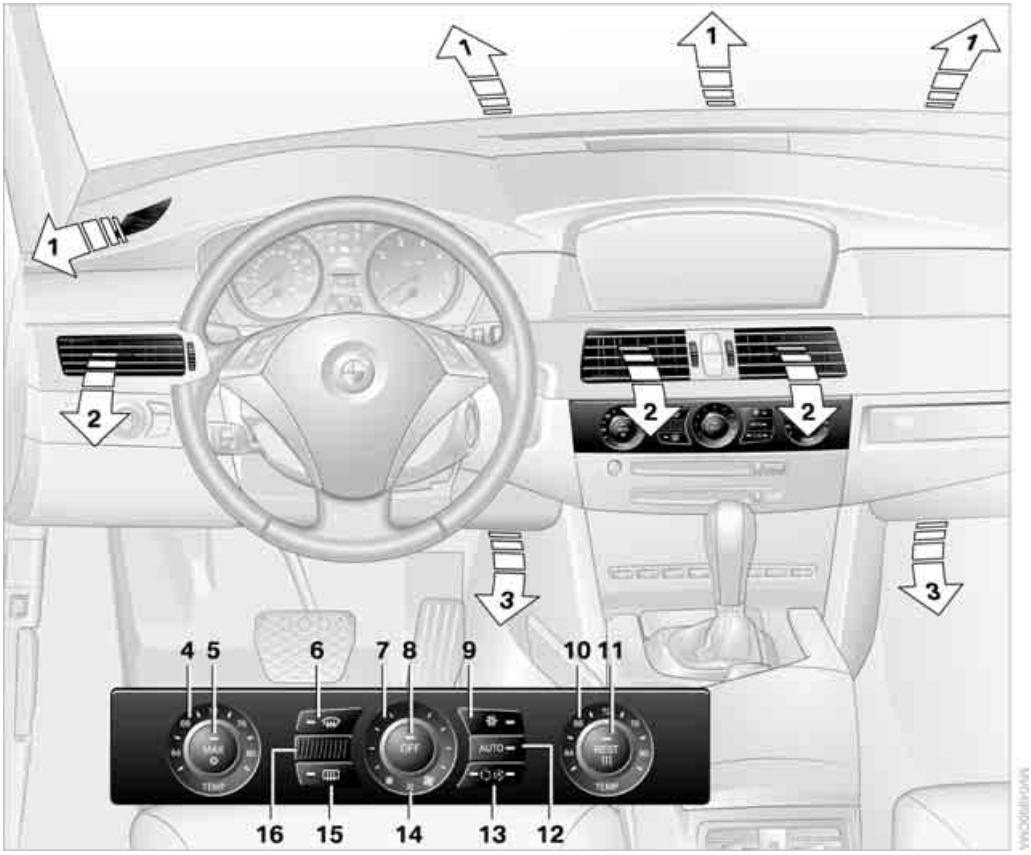


Reading lamps are located in the front and rear adjacent to the interior lamps. Press the button to switch the lamps on and off.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Climate

Automatic climate control



1 Air directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body region, refer to Front ventilation on page 110

3 Air to footwell

4 Temperature, left side of passenger compartment

5 Maximum cooling

6 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

7 Air volume, manual

8 Switching off automatic climate control

9 Switching cooling function on and off manually

10 Temperature, right side of passenger compartment

11 Residual heat mode

12 AUTO program

13 AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

14 LED for parked car ventilation system

15 Rear window defroster

16 Air grill for interior temperature sensor – please keep clear and unobstructed

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The current setting for air distribution is displayed on the Control Display.

A congenial climate

The AUTO program offers the optimum air distribution and air volume for virtually all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. Now you only need to select an interior temperature pleasant to you.

The following sections contain more detailed information on the available setting options.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, also refer to Personal Profile settings on page 29.

AUTO program

The AUTO program handles the adjustment of air distribution to the windshield and side windows, in the direction of the upper body, and in the footwell, as well as the air volume. It also adapts your instructions for the temperature to outside influences throughout the year.

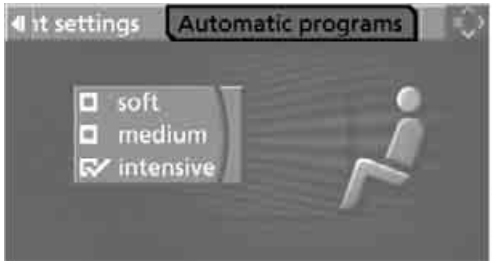
The cooling is switched on automatically with the AUTO program. At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program in such a way that window condensation is prevented as much as possible.

Intensity of AUTO program

To meet your individual needs, you can weaken or strengthen the intensity of the automatic climate control.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Automatic programs" and press the controller.



4. Select the desired intensity and press the controller.

   The marked intensity of the automatic program is switched on.

Temperature

Set the desired temperature individually on the driver's and front passenger side.

The automatic climate control adjusts this temperature as quickly as possible at any time of year, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

When changing between different temperature settings in rapid succession, the automatic climate control does not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.◀

Adjusting temperature in upper body region

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Select the field by moving the controller and turning the controller to adjust the temperature.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Quickly remove ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.

Rear window defroster

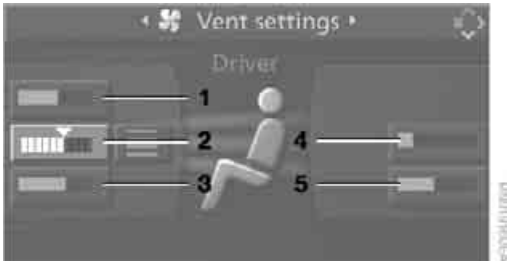
The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a while.

Air volume, manual

You can adjust the air volume by turning. You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air volume with the AUTO button.

Manual air distribution

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.
   The driver's and front passenger side can be adjusted separately with the fields on the right or left side.
4. Select the driver's or front passenger side if necessary.
   Move the controller to the right or left repeatedly until the driver's or front passenger side is selected.
5. Select the desired field by moving the controller.
6. Turn the controller to adjust the air distribution.



Driver's side:

1 Air directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body

3 Air to footwell

Front passenger side:

4 Air for the upper body

5 Air to footwell

Pressing the AUTO button cancels the air distribution settings via iDrive and vice versa.◀

Switching cooling function on and off

The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before also reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting. Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program. The passenger compartment can only be cooled with the engine running.

Maximum cooling

Maximally cooled air is obtained as quickly as possible at an outside temperature above approx. 32 °F / 0 °C and with the engine running.

The automatic climate control changes over to the lowest temperature and switches into the recirculated-air mode. The maximum air volume only flows out of the vents for the upper

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

body. Therefore, open these vents for maximum cooling.

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode

You can respond to pollutants or unpleasant odors in the immediate environment by suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle. During AUC operation, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

By pressing the button repeatedly, you can request three operating modes:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Right LED on, AUC mode: the system detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off the supply as needed.
- ▷ Left LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off.

⚠ If condensation starts to form on the inside window surfaces during operation in the recirculated-air mode, you should switch it off while also increasing the air volume as required.
The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates continuously.◀

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the passenger compartment, e.g. while stopped at a school to pick up a child.

The function can be switched on when the following conditions are met:

- ▷ up to 15 minutes after switching off the engine
- ▷ with engine at operating temperature
- ▷ with sufficient battery voltage
- ▷ at an outside temperature below 77 °F / 25 °C

The LED lights up when the function is switched on.

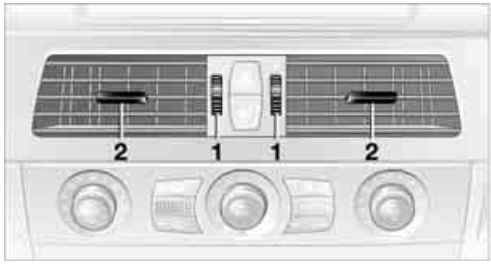
From radio readiness the interior temperature, the air volume and the air distribution can be set.

Switching automatic climate control on and off

The air volume, the heater and the cooling function are all switched off.

You can restart the automatic climate control by pressing any of its buttons except the REST button.

Front ventilation



1 Knurled wheels to smoothly open and close vent outlets

2 Levers to change the vent outlet direction

⚠ Do not drop any foreign objects into the vent outlets, otherwise these could be catapulted outwards and lead to injuries.◀

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance, if the interior has become too warm, etc.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and is not directed straight at you.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Rear ventilation

1 Knurled wheel to smoothly open and close vent outlets

2 Knurled wheel to adjust the temperature:
- ▷ Turn toward blue: colder
- ▷ Turn toward red: warmer

3 Levers to change the vent outlet direction

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter as a standard part of your scheduled maintenance.
You can select a display of more detailed information on the Control Display, refer to page 78.

Parked car ventilation

The concept

The parked car ventilation blows air into the passenger compartment to lower interior temperatures.

It is ready to use in the parked car mode at any outside temperature.

You can set two different times for the system to start. The parked car ventilation can also be switched on and off directly. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Since the system uses a substantial amount of electrical current, you should refrain from activating it twice in succession without allowing the battery to be recharged in normal operation between use.

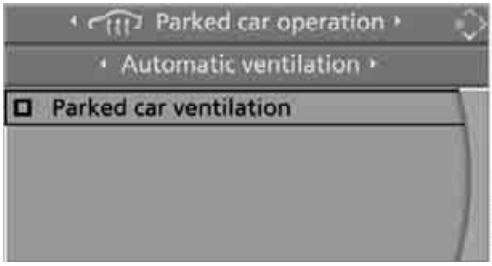
The air emerges through the upper body region vent outlets in the instrument panel. These vent outlets must be open for the system to operate.

The parked car ventilation is operated via iDrive.

Switching on and off directly

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Automatic ventilation" and press the controller.
5. Select "Parked car ventilation" and press the controller.



✔ The parked-car ventilation is switched on.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes.

Preselecting activation times

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Activation time" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

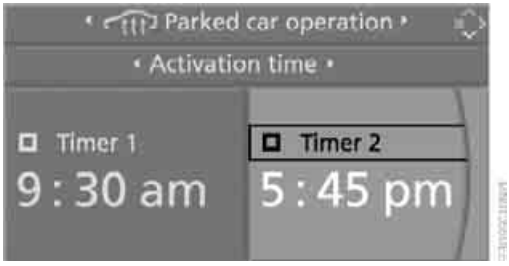
5. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2".

6. Select the time and press the controller. The first time setting is highlighted.

7. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is highlighted.
9. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the time is stored.

Activating activation time

Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2" and press the controller.



The activation time is activated.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control lights up.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes when the parked car ventilation has switched on.

The parked car ventilation is only available for activation within the next 24 hours. Then it must be activated again.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Practical interior accessories

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled accessories, such as door openers and house alarm systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. After this, the programmed memory button **1** will operate the system in question. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

Should you sell your vehicle one day, be sure to delete the stored programs beforehand for your safety, refer to page 114.

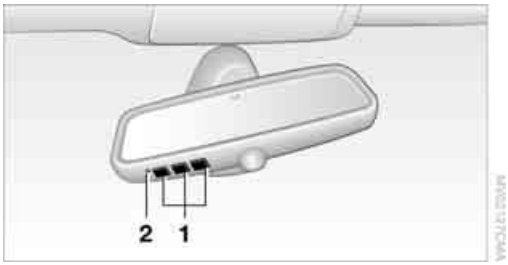
To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the travel range of the device. Also, comply with the safety precautions of the original hand-held transmitter.◀

Checking compatibility

If you see this symbol on the packaging or in the manual supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, it is safe to assume that it is compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

If you have additional questions, please contact your BMW center or call: 1-800-355-3515.
Information is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmwusa.com or www.homelink.com.
HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.◀

Programming



1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on ignition, refer to page 59.
2. When starting operation for the first time: Press both outer memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes. All stored programs are deleted.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 2 in/5 cm to 8 in/20 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit button on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

You can operate the device when the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

If the device fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly for a short time and then remains lit for approx. 2 seconds, this indicates that the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. In the case of an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described at Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the equipment to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization.
When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

If you have any additional questions, please contact your BMW center.◀

Deleting stored programs

Press both outer memory buttons **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes:
All stored programs are deleted.

Individual programs cannot be deleted.

Sun blinds*

Sun blind for rear window

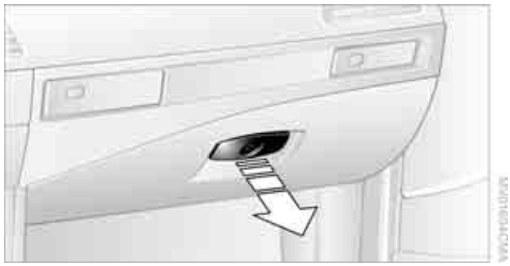
Press the button on the driver's door.

Sun blinds for rear side windows

Pull the loop of the roller sun blind and hook onto bracket.

Glove compartment

Opening



Pull the handle. The light in the glove compartment switches on.

To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven, close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Closing

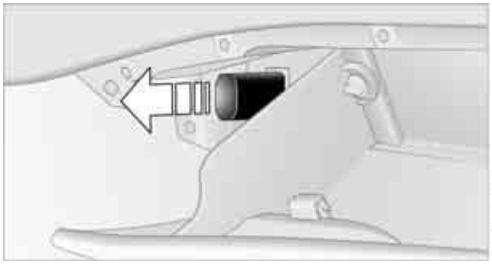
Fold the cover up.

Locking

Lock with a key.

If you only hand over the remote control without the integrated key, e.g. for valet parking, refer to page 28, the glove compartment cannot be unlocked.◀

Rechargeable flashlight



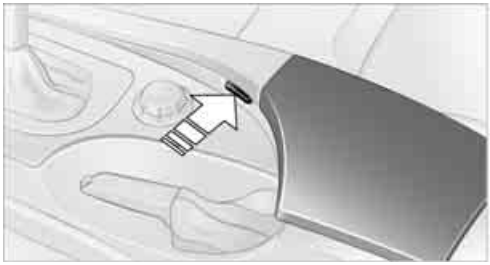
The flashlight is located on the left side of the glove compartment.
The flashlight can remain plugged in continuously. Pull the flashlight out of the socket when needed.

To avoid possibly damaging the lamp, always ensure that it is switched off before inserting it in the socket.◀

Center armrest, front

The compartment in the center armrest is divided into two sections.

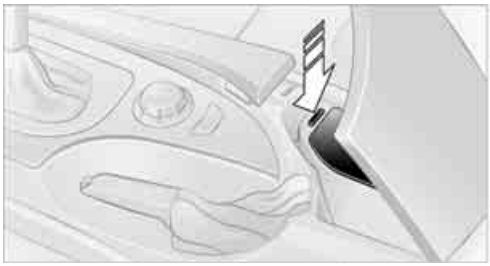
Opening cover



Press the button. The cover opens somewhat and can be folded upwards.

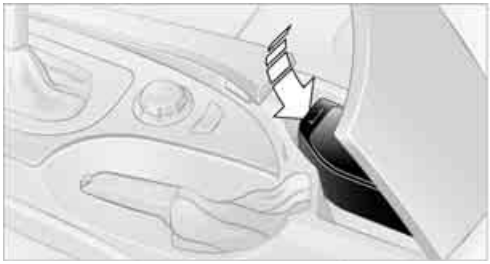
Depending on vehicle equipment, the upper section contains a compartment with a mat that can be removed for cleaning or a telephone cradle*.

Opening upper compartment



Press button and fold cover upward.

Accessing lower compartment



Press the button at the front and fold the upper compartment or the telephone cradle upward.

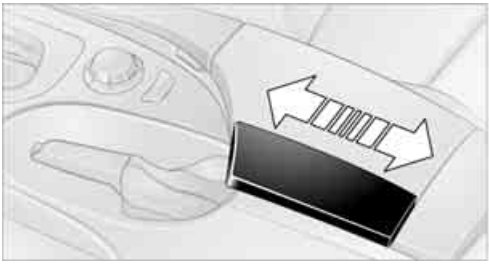
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Ventilating lower compartment

Push the slide in the lower compartment upward.

Depending on the automatic climate control setting, the temperature inside the ventilated compartment may be higher than in the rest of the interior. Should this be the case, push the slide downward to close off the ventilation.◀

Adjusting



Push the illustrated section of the center armrest into the desired position.

Connection for external audio device

You can connect an external audio device, e.g. a CD or an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers, refer to page 179.

Storage compartments

Storage compartments are located on the doors, in the front center console and in the rear.
Storage nets are located on the backrests of the front seats, and a net* is provided in the front passenger footwell.

Do not stow hard or sharp-edged objects in the storage nets or the net, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◀

Clothes hooks

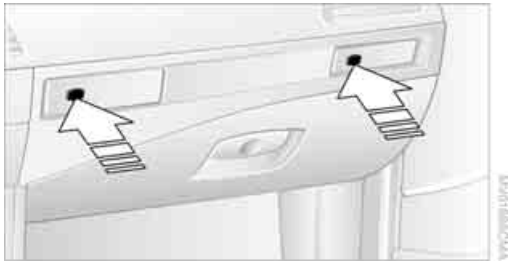
Clothes hooks are located near the grab handles in the rear.

When hanging clothing on the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision. Do not hang heavy objects on the hooks. If you do so, they could cause personal injury to occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Cup holders

Do not place containers made of glass in the cup holders. This would lead to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. Do not force containers that are too large into the cup holders, otherwise damage could result.◀

Opening



Briefly press the button.

Closing

Press the cover in the center and push in the cup holder.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Front ashtray

Opening

Slide back the cover.

Emptying

Push the ashtray toward the front: the ashtray rises and can be removed.

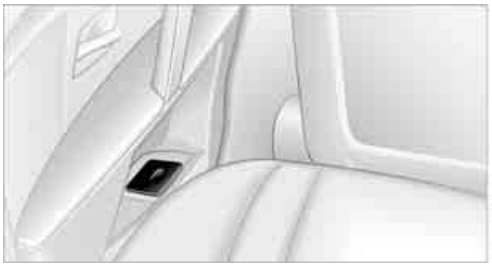
Cigarette lighter, front

Press in the lighter with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

⚠ Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, use the lighter and burn themselves.◀

Ashtray, rear



Emptying

Press the entire cover down. The ashtray rises and can be removed.

Cigarette lighter, rear

Refer to Cigarette lighter, front.

Connecting electrical devices

Sockets

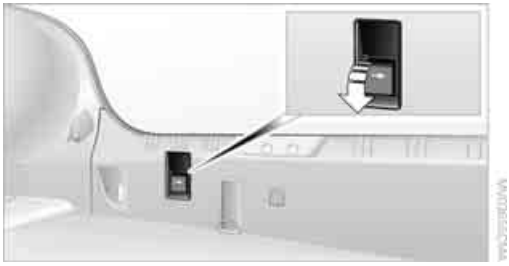
With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the cigarette lighter socket can be used as a power outlet for hand flashlights, car vacuum cleaners, etc., with power ratings of up to approx. 200 W at 12 V. Avoid damaging the socket due to inserting plugs of different shapes or sizes. The same is true for all power outlets in the vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

In front passenger footwell

Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

Sedan: In cargo bay



Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

Sports Wagon: In cargo bay

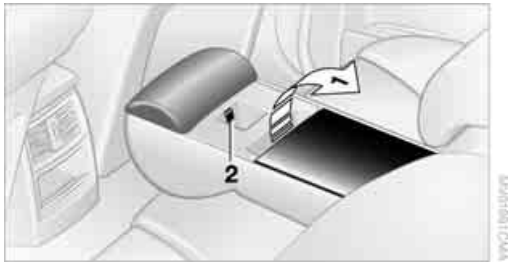
Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

In the rear center console

Depending on the equipment, the sockets in the rear are covered with caps or equipped with a lighter. Refer to Cigarette lighter, front, page 117.

Access to socket:
Remove respective cap or lighter.

Center armrest, rear



Storage tray:
Pull the cover upward, arrow **1**.

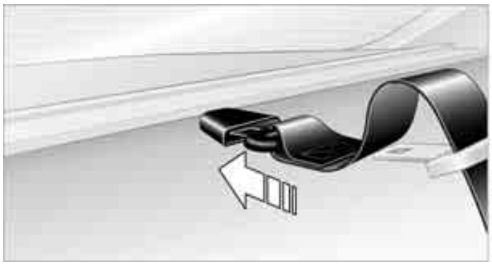
Access to cup holders:
Press button **2** and open the cover.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

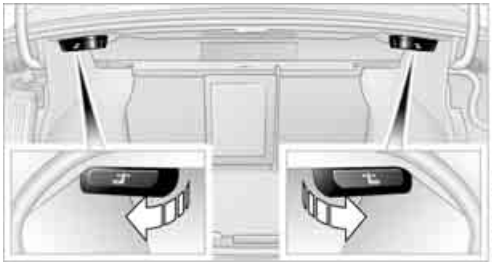
Sedan: Through-loading system*

Opening

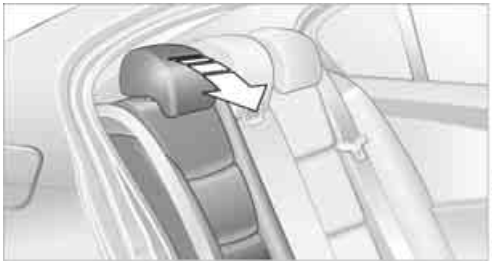
1. Open the buckle of the center safety belt in the rear and insert the latch plate at the end of the belt into the fixture on the rear window shelf.



2. Push the corresponding head restraint down as far as it will go, refer to page 49.
3. To release the rear backrest, pull the corresponding lever in the cargo bay.



4. The unlocked rear backrest moves forward slightly. Fold the backrest forward by the head restraint.



Closing

1. Fold the rear backrest into the seating position and engage.

When you return the seat to its upright position, make sure that the catch engages properly. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the vehicle during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.◀

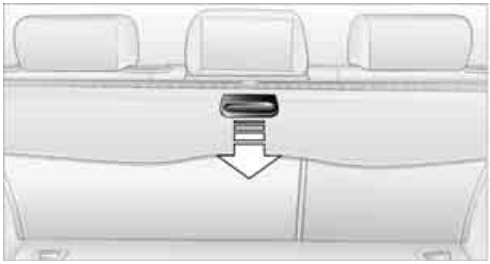
2. Release the latch plate from the bracket on the rear window shelf and insert it into the buckle of the center safety belt. The latch plate must audibly engage.

The lashing eyes in the cargo bay provide you with a way to attach cargo-bay nets* or luggage straps for securing suitcases and luggage, refer to page 130.

Sports Wagon: cargo bay

Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo bay; otherwise the vehicle could be damaged.◀

Roll-up cover



Pull out the roll-up cover and hook it into the brackets.

Do not place heavy or hard objects on the roll-up cover. If you do so, they may already pose a danger to vehicle occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.
Do not allow the roll-up cover to snap back, otherwise it can be damaged.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Manual roll-up cover

When opening the tailgate or rear window, the roll-up cover is raised. Before closing the tailgate and rear window, press down the roll-up cover until it engages.

Automatic roll-up cover*

When the tailgate or rear window are opened, the roll-up cover is raised, and when the tailgate and rear window are closed, it is lowered.

Make sure that the closing area of the roll-up cover is clear of obstructions, otherwise the payload or the roll-up cover may be damaged.◀

Expanding cargo bay

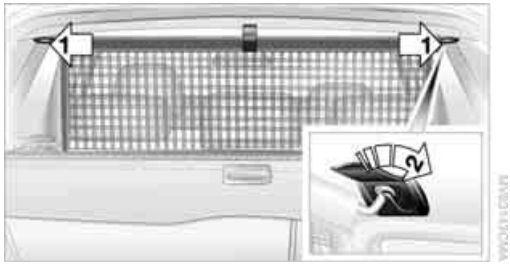
The rear backrest is divided. You can fold down both sides separately in order to expand the cargo bay.

Reach into the recess and pull toward the front.

When you fold back the backrest, be sure that the catch engages securely. The red warning indicator disappears in the recess when the catch is engaged. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the passenger compartment during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.◀

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the safety belt information on page 45.◀

Separation net



Do not allow the separation net to snap back, otherwise there is a risk of injury and the separation net may be damaged.◀

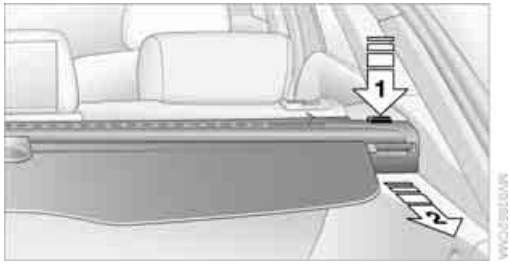
With normal cargo bay

Pull the separation net out of the case by the loop. Grasp the rod on both sides and insert it in the brackets, arrow **1**. This is best carried out from the rear seat.

When you no longer require the separation net, grasp the rod on both sides and remove it from the brackets, arrow **2**. Then slowly allow the separation net to glide into the case.

With an expanded cargo bay

1. Fold down both rear backrests, refer to Expanding cargo bay.
2. Unlock the case on both sides with the buttons, arrow **1**.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

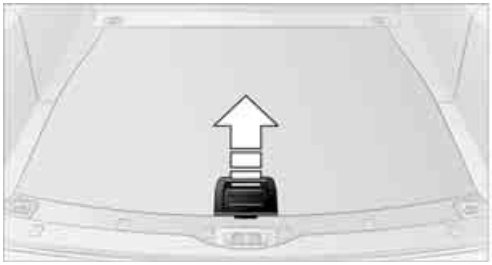
3. Pull out the case downward, arrow **2**; avoid tilting when doing so.

4. Push the case into the guides on the back of the seat backrests.
5. Carefully pull out the separation net and insert it in the front brackets as described in With normal cargo bay. This is best carried out from the front seat.

To restore the original state, proceed in the reverse order. Finally, lay the case in the two side brackets and then press forward until it engages. The red warning indicator disappears in the recess when the catch is engaged. Check whether the case is properly locked in place by pulling it with a sudden movement.

Compartment in floor

Automatic roll-up cover: the opened floor panel strikes against the roll-up cover in the end position. If necessary, unhook the roll-up cover at the rear before opening the floor panel.



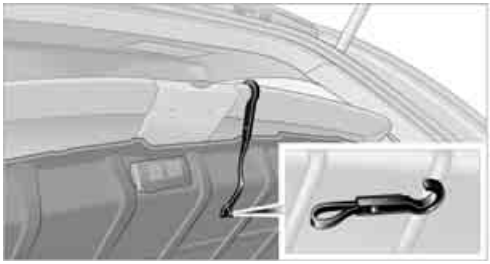
To open, reach into the recess and swing up the handle.

The floor panel flap can be locked.

The partitions in the compartment can be rearranged.

Folding up spare tire cover

1. Swing up the cover.



2. Detach the hook from the bracket and hook into the floor panel flap.

Before swinging down, return the hook to its original position.

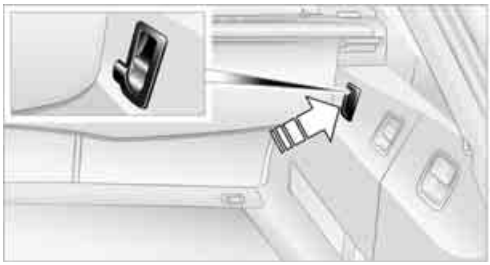
Storage area package*

Retaining straps

You can unhook the right-hand retaining strap, e.g. to open the side panel. To unhook at the rear end, pull downward; to hook in, press it into the opening. In addition, it can also be secured in the center. This makes it possible to secure objects of different sizes.

Hooks

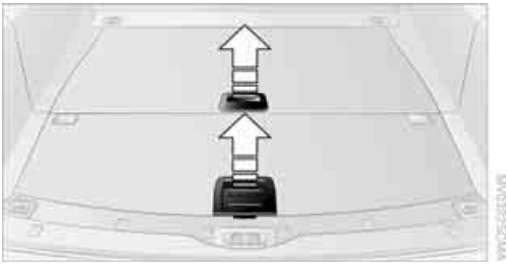
Two hooks can be used to secure smaller objects.



Press at bottom and fold out until they lock.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

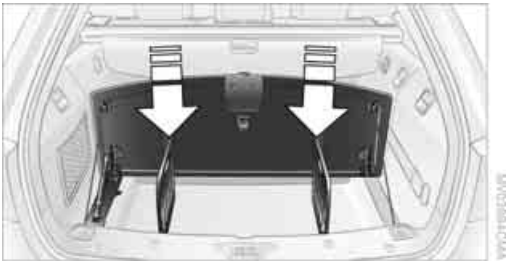
Compartments in floor



Front compartment:
To open the flap, pull upward on the handle.
To close the flap, press downward until it locks.

Rear compartment:
To open, reach into the recess and swing up the handle.
The rear door can be locked.

Dividing up rear compartment



Fold out the partitions and press down.

⚠ Use the separation net, refer to page 120, otherwise objects could be thrown around and endanger occupants, e.g. during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Ski bag*

Designed for safe, clean transport of up to 4 pairs of standard skis or up to 2 snowboards.

With the ski bag you can stow skis with a length of up to 6.9 ft/2.10 m. When skis of 6.9 ft/2.10 m in length are loaded, the ski bag will tend to contract, reducing its overall capacity.

Loading

1. Fold down the center armrest, press the button and open the cover.

2. Press the button again; the cover in the cargo bay opens. If you press the button firmly the first time, this also opens the cover in the cargo bay.
3. Extend the ski bag between the front seats and fill it. The zipper facilitates access to the stowed items and drying of the ski bag.
4. Insert the latch plate of the ski bag retaining strap into the center safety belt buckle that is marked CENTER.

Only stow clean skis in the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Securing cargo

After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

Secure the ski bag in this way. If you fail to do so, it could endanger occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

To store the ski bag, perform the above steps in reverse order.

Removing ski bag

The ski bag can be completely removed, e.g. for faster drying or to allow you to put it to other uses.

1. Pull the handle forward and pull the ski bag up and out.
2. Close the cover in the cargo bay.

Your BMW center will be glad to provide you with more detailed information on the various items of equipment.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Driving tips

This section is designed to provide you with extra support by supplying information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Things to remember when driving

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. To ensure that your vehicle continues to provide optimized economy of operation throughout an extended service life, we request that you devote careful attention to the following section.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at changing engine and driving speeds, however do not exceed 4,500 rpm or 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kick-down mode during these initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission

Do not use the acceleration assistant during the break-in period, refer to page 64.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive reservedly during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive in a reserved manner during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch is only at its optimized level after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km.During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in instructions again if components mentioned above must be replaced after subsequent driving operation.

General driving notes

Closing luggage compartment lid/tailgate

Operate the vehicle only when the luggage compartment lid/tailgate is completely closed. Otherwise, exhaust fumes could enter the interior of the vehicle.◀

If special circumstances should make it absolutely necessary to operate the vehicle with the luggage compartment lid/tailgate open:

1. Close all windows and the glass sunroof or panorama glass sunroof.
2. Increase the air volume of the automatic climate control to a high level, refer to page 109.

Hot exhaust system

As in all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated on the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to it, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious property damage as well as personal injury. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise there is a risk of burns.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Mobile communications devices in vehicle

BMW discourages the use of mobile communications devices, e.g. mobile phones, inside the vehicle without a direct connection to an outside antenna. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication device can influence one another. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation which results from transmission will be dissipated from the vehicle interior.◀

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning, and is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the tread depth of the tires decreases, refer also to Minimum tire tread on page 213.

Driving through water

Do not drive through water on the road if it is deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Using handbrake on inclines

On inclines, do not hold the vehicle with the clutch; use the handbrake. Otherwise greater clutch wear will result.◀

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission

Start off quickly on slopes. Do not hold the vehicle on a hill by pressing the accelerator, but apply the handbrake instead. Otherwise overheating can occur in the transmission region.◀

Starting assistant

The starting assistant enables you to start off conveniently on slopes. The handbrake is not required for this purpose.

1. Hold the vehicle with the footbrake.
2. Release the footbrake and drive off quickly.

The starting assistant holds the vehicle for approx. 2 seconds after releasing the footbrake. Depending on the load, the vehicle may also roll back slightly during this time. After releasing the footbrake, drive off quickly, otherwise the starting assistant no longer holds the vehicle after approx. 2 seconds and it begins to roll back.◀

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. In situations that require it, it is best to brake with full force. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal, combined with sounds from the hydraulic circuits, indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light but consistent pedal pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

To prevent overheating and the resulting reduced efficiency of the brake system, drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Even light but consistent pressure on the brake pedal

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

The braking effect of the engine can be further increased by downshifting, if necessary all the way down into first gear. This strategy helps you avoid placing excessive loads on the brake system. For information on downshifting in the manual mode of the automatic transmission, refer to page 65.

⚠ Do not drive with the clutch depressed, in idle or with the engine switched off, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering. Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area of movement of the pedals and impair their operation.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

When vehicle is parked

Condensation forms in the air conditioner system during operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Before driving into a car wash

To prevent the exterior mirrors on this vehicle from being damaged, always fold them in by hand before entering an automatic car wash.

General information on the care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Rear window wiper*

The rear window wiper can be damaged in car washes. Take appropriate protective measures; ask the car wash operator if necessary.

With comfort access and automatic transmission

Insert the remote control into the ignition lock. The engine can be switched off in selector lever position N. Also refer to page 40.

Cargo loading

⚠ To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. The ultimate result can assume the form of a sudden blow-out.◀

Determining loading limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

   ⚠ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed YYY lbs. or XXX kg, as otherwise the vehicle may be damaged and unstable driving conditions may result.◀

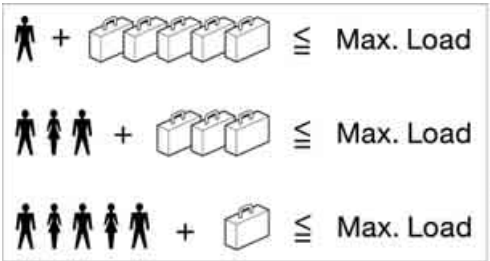
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from YYY lbs. or XXX kg.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the XXX amount equals

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.:
1,400 lbs. minus 750 lbs. = 650 lbs.

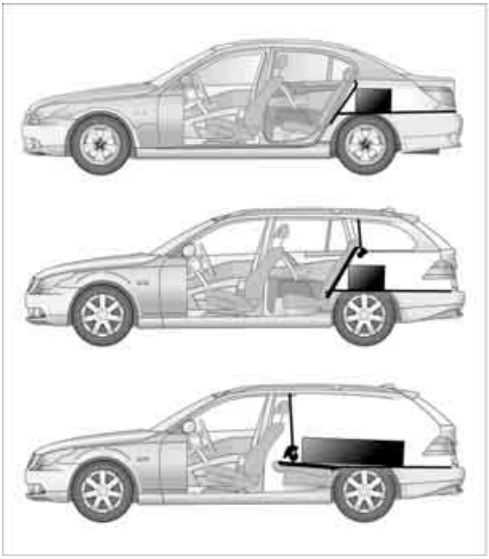
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



The permissible load is the total of the weight of occupants and cargo/luggage. The greater the weight of occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

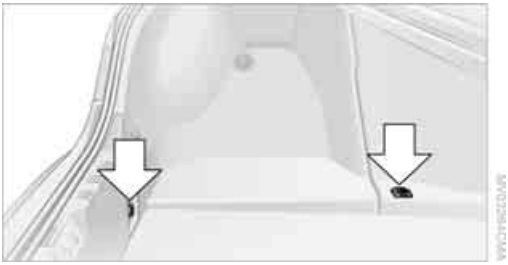
Stowing cargo



- Load heavy cargo as far forward and as low as possible, placing it directly behind the rear backrest.
- Cover sharp edges and corners.
- For very heavy cargo when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each safety belt in the opposite buckle.
- Do not pile objects higher than the top edge of the backrest.
- Sports Wagon:
  Use the separation net to protect the occupants, refer to page 120. Make sure that objects cannot penetrate through the separation net.
  Wrap sharp-edged or pointed objects which could strike the rear window while driving.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Securing cargo



- ▷ Use the luggage net*, luggage straps, or securing straps to hold down small and lightweight luggage and cargo.
- ▷ Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your BMW center. Four lashing eyes mounted in the cargo bay are used to secure these heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration.
- ▷ Please observe the special instructions supplied with the heavy-duty cargo straps.

⚠ Position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the car's occupants, for example if sudden braking or evasive maneuvers are necessary.
Use only the lashing eyes to secure heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration, otherwise the cargo straps could become detached or the vehicle could be damaged.
Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 241, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.
You should never transport unsecured heavy or hard objects in the passenger compartment, as they could fly around and pose a safety hazard to the vehicle's occupants during abrupt braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Roof-mounted luggage rack*

A special rack system is available as an option for your BMW. Please comply with the precautions included with the installation instructions.

Mounting points

The mounting points are located in the door openings or on the roof rails*.

Loading roof-mounted luggage rack

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on its handling and steering response.
You should therefore always remember not to exceed the approved roof load capacity, the approved gross vehicle weight or the axle loads when loading the rack.

You can find the specified weights under Weights on page 241.

The load on the roof must be evenly distributed and must not extend outward beyond the limits of the loading surface. Always stow the heaviest pieces on the bottom. Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for raising the glass sunroof, and that objects do not project into the opening path of the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

Secure roof-mounted cargo correctly and securely to prevent it from shifting or falling off during the trip.

Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and specify your route so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

Online Edition for Part No. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Starting navigation system*

Your navigation system can use satellites to ascertain the precise position of your vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

Navigation DVD

The navigation system requires a special navigation DVD. The latest version is available at your BMW center.

Inserting navigation DVD

1. Insert the navigation DVD with the labeled side up. The DVD is automatically pulled in.
2. Allow several seconds for the system to scan the data from the DVD.

Removing navigation DVD

1. Press button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

If the DVD is not ejected from the drive, it is possible that it is blocked. A message appears on the Control Display.

Display in assistance window

You can display the route or the current position in the assistance window. This display remains visible even if you change to another application.

1. Move the controller to the right to enter the assistance window.

2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select the desired route view or "Current position".

4. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from among the following options:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Entering destination via voice*, refer to page 138
- ▷ Selecting destination using information, refer to page 141
- ▷ Selecting destination from a list, refer to Destination list, page 141
- ▷ Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 142
- ▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 144

After selecting your destination you can proceed to start the destination guidance, refer to page 147.

Operating navigation system

⚠ Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".

3. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

Entering a destination manually

The system's word matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns, refer to page 145. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored names can be called up quickly.

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.

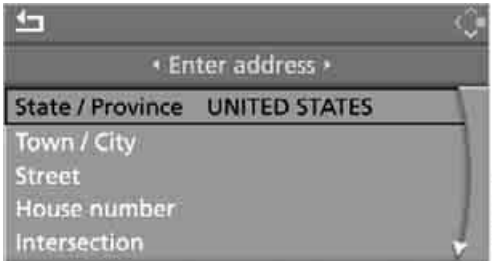
The system also supports you with the following features:

▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town/city.

▷ You can skip the entry of country and locality if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Selecting country

1. Select "State / Province" or the displayed country and press the controller.



The list of available countries appears on the display.

2. Select the country of destination and press the controller.

In order to be able to start the destination guidance, at least the town/city of the destination or its zip code must be entered.

Entering destination via town/city name

1. Select "Town / City" or the displayed town/city and press the controller.
2. Select the starting letter and press controller.
   A list of all towns/cities starting with this letter appears on the Control Display.
3. To delete the letter entered if necessary:

   ▷ Delete individual numbers or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press the controller.

   ▷ Delete all numbers or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and hold the controller down.

4. If necessary, enter more letters.
   The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

   ▷ Enter blank space if necessary:
   Select the _ symbol and press the controller.

5. Change to the third field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the town/

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

city name is selected from the list and press the controller.

Entering destination by zip code

1. Select "Town / City" and press the controller.
2. Enter the zip code:
   Select the desired digits and press the controller.

   - ▷ Enter a blank space:
     Select the _ symbol and press the controller.
   - ▷ Delete individual numbers or letters:
     Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press the controller.
   - ▷ Delete all numbers or letters:
     Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and hold the controller down.
3. Select the zip code and press the controller.
   The corresponding destination is displayed.
4. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering street, house number and intersection

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street and press the controller.
2. Enter the street.
   The street is entered exactly like the destination.

The intersection is entered in the same way as the street.

Entering a street without entering destination

You can also enter a street without entering a destination. In this case all streets of the entered country are offered for selection. The related town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, you can undo this entry. This may be practical if the desired street does not exist in the entered destination, because, for example, it belongs to another part of the town/city.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1. Change to upper field.
   The arrow is selected.

2. Turn the controller to the right until the request for the entry of a street in the country appears and press the controller.

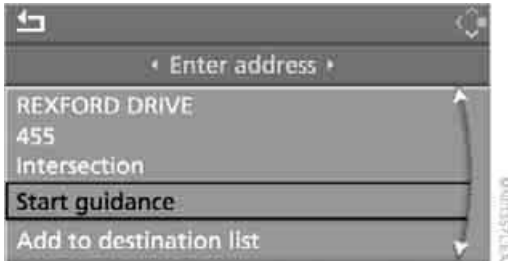
3. Change to the second field from the top and enter the street.

Entering house number

All house numbers stored for the street on the navigation DVD can be entered.

1. Select "House number" and press the controller.
2. Enter the house number:
   Select the desired digits and press the controller.
3. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until the house number is selected and press the controller.

Starting destination guidance with manual destination entry



▷ Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.
Destination guidance starts immediately.

▷ If the destination guidance does not need to be started immediately:
Select "Add to destination list" and press the controller.
The destination is stored in the destination list, refer to page 141.

Entering destination via voice*

You can enter a desired destination via the voice command system. When entering the destination, it is possible to change between voice command and iDrive at any time. Reactivate the voice command function for this purpose if necessary.

▷ With ›Options‹ you can have the possible commands read aloud.◀

1. Press the button on the steering wheel or in the center console.
2. ›Enter address‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Selecting country

1. Wait for the system to ask for the country of destination.

2. Say the name of the country of destination.

Say the name of the country of destination in the language of the voice command system.

Entering destination

The destination can be spelled or entered as an entire word.

Spelling destination

To enter the destination, spell it using the orthography of the country of destination. Pronounce the letters smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Spell town/city name:
   Say at least the first three letters of the destination. The more letters you say, the more exactly the system recognizes the town/city.

   The system can suggest up to 20 destinations that match your entries. Up to 6 entries are displayed at once on the Control Display.

A destination is suggested by the system.

2. Select town/city:
   - ▷ Select highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ To show other entries in the list: ›Next page‹
   - ▷ To respell the town/city: ›Repeat‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering destination as an entire word

Towns/cities and streets located in the region where the language of the voice command system is spoken can be entered as an entire word.

Example: to enter a US destination as an entire word, the system language must be English.

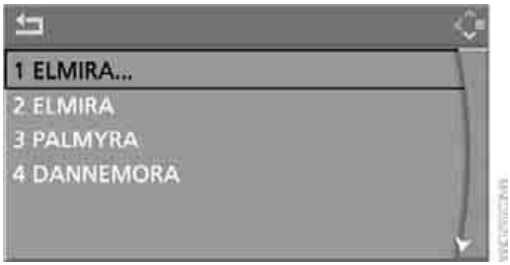
The condition for this is the use of a suitable navigation DVD.

Speak smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Wait for the system to request the destination.

2. Say the name of the destination.

   The system can suggest up to 6 destinations that match your entries.



A destination is suggested by the system.

3. Select town/city:
   - ▷ Select highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ To reenter the town/city: ›Repeat‹
   - ▷ To enter the town/city by spelling: ›Spell‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

▷ Identical-sounding towns/cities that cannot be distinguished by the system are

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

compiled in a separate list and shown as a destination followed by three dots.
Select this entry with ›Yes‹ if necessary. Then select the desired town/city from this list.◀

Entering street and house number

The street is entered in the same way as the destination.

To enter the house number:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.

Up to 4-digit house numbers can be entered.

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Saving destination

The destination is added to the destination list or can be stored in the address book.

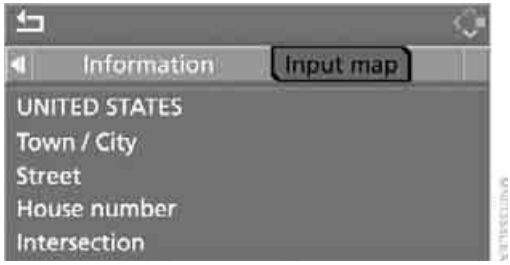
›Add to destination list‹ or
›Add to address book‹

Map-guided destination selection

If you only know the location of the town/city or street of the destination, then you can enter the destination by using a map. You can use the cursor to select the destination on the map and then adopt it into the destination guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

3. Select "Input map" and press the controller.



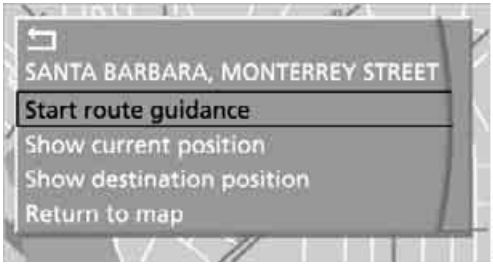
A section of a map is displayed on the Control Display:

- ▷ During destination guidance, around the current destination
- ▷ With the destination guidance deactivated, around the last destination entered

4. Select destination with cursor.
   - ▷ Changing scale: turn the controller.
   - ▷ Moving map: move the controller in the corresponding direction.
     The controller can be moved to the left, right, forward, backward and also diagonally.
5. To adopt or store the destination in the destination guidance system, press the controller.
   The selected destination and other menu items are displayed.
6. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ "Start route guidance" starts destination guidance.
   - ▷ "Show current position" places the current position in the center of the map.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

- ▷ "Show destination position" places the current destination in the center of the map.
- ▷ "Return to map" changes back to the "Input map".
- ▷ Exit the menu.



7. Press the controller.

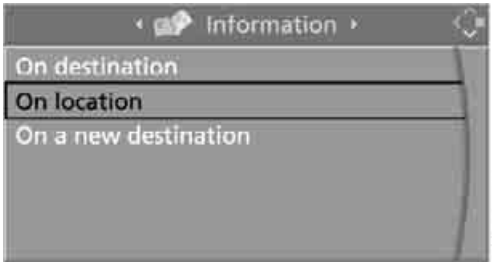
The map for the destination entry can also be displayed in the map display:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

Selecting destination using information

You can obtain a display of selected destinations, e.g. hotels, sights or hospitals, and adopt them into the destination guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Select "Information" and press the controller.

3. Select location:
   - ▷ "On destination"
   - ▷ "On location"
   - ▷ "On a new destination"



4. Press the controller.
5. Make your selection, e.g. "Hotels and restaurants", and press the controller.
   These destinations are displayed on the Control Display.

6. Select a destination and press the controller.
7. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ To adopt the address in the destination list and start the destination guidance: Select "Select as destination" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To establish a telephone connection: Select "Call" and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Destination list

The last 20 entered destinations are shown in the destination list. You can display these destinations and adopt them in the destination guidance system.
For example, to plan a longer route, you can store all destinations you want to drive to in advance in the destination list, refer to Entering a destination manually on page 135.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

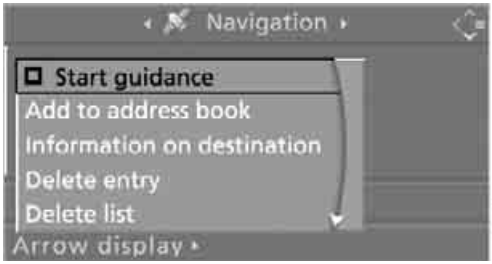
The last destination entered is the first item in the destination list.

➡● This symbol indicates the current destination during destination guide.

To display additional destinations from the destination list:
Turn the controller.

Applying destination in destination guidance system

1. Select the desired destination and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



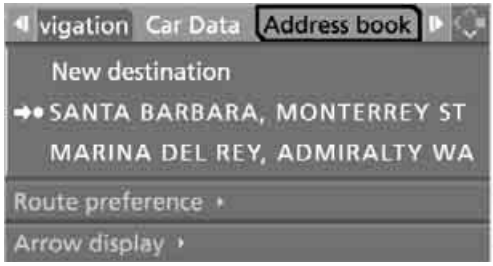
Editing destination list

1. Select the desired destination in the destination list and press the controller.
2. The selected destination can be edited:
   - ▷ Store entry:
     Select "Add to address book".
   - ▷ Display information on destination:
     Select "Information on destination".
   - ▷ Delete entry:
     Select "Delete entry".
   - ▷ Delete all entries:
     Select "Delete list". The destination guidance is switched off.
   - ▷ Change entry:
     Select "Edit". For operation, refer to Entering destination via town/city name, page 136.
3. Press the controller.

Address book

Opening address book

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

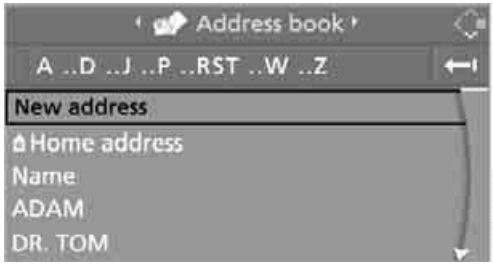


Select "Address book" and press the controller.

Storing destinations in address book

You can store approx. 100 destinations in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select "New address" and press the controller.



3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

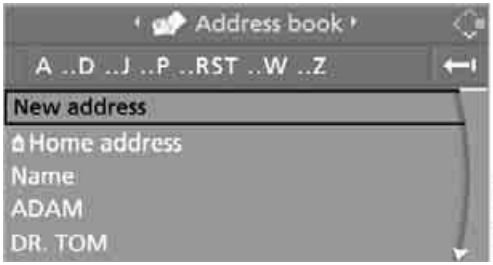
4. Enter name and address, also refer to Entering a destination manually, page 135.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.
   The entry is stored in the address book.

You can also store a destination from the destination list in the address book, refer to page 141.

Storing current position*

The current position can be adopted into the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New address" is selected and press the controller.

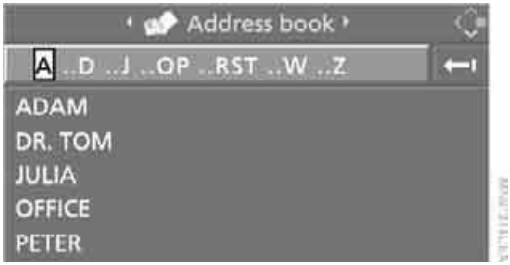


3. Select "Use current location as address" and press the controller.
   The name given can be changed. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 135.
4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

You can also enter your current position into the address book if you have left the sector covered by the navigation DVD. In this case, you must enter a name.

Selecting destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
   The stored entries appear on the Control Display.



2. Select the entry and press the controller.

To start the destination guidance:
Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing destinations from address book

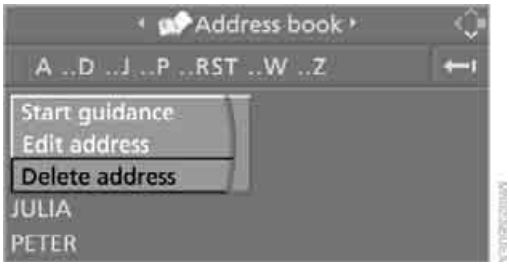
1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Edit address" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Change entry.
   For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 135.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Deleting individual destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Delete address" and press the controller.



4. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Deleting all destinations from address book

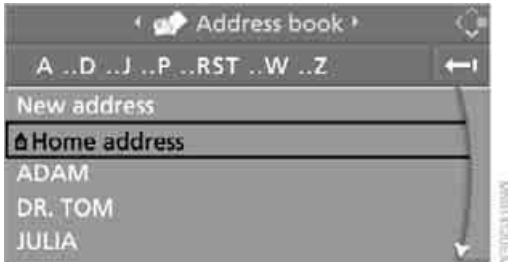
1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Delete data" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Delete address book" and press the controller.
7. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Storing home address

You can store your current position or the current destination as the home address in the address book. This entry occupies the second position in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Home address" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select "Use current location as address", or "Save current destination" during the destination guidance, and press the controller.
4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Adopting home address as destination

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing home address

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Edit address" and press the controller. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 135.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Selecting route

You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like while entering the destination and whenever the destination guidance is active.

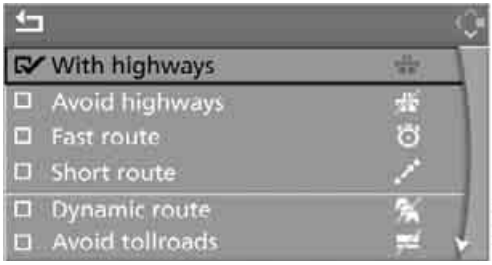
The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g. whether it is a highway or a winding road. The road types are stored on the navigation DVD. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

Changing route criteria

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route preference" is selected and press the controller.

The various criteria are listed on the Control Display.

3. Select a route criterion for the route:
   - ▷ "With highways"
     Freeways and major traffic arteries are given priority
   - ▷ "Avoid highways"
     Freeways are avoided where possible
   - ▷ "Fast route"
     The short traveling time, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
   - ▷ "Short route"
     Short route, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be
4. Press the controller.



The route criterion is highlighted.

5. If necessary, select an additional route criterion and then press the controller:
   - ▷ "Dynamic route"*
     Automatic changing of the route in case of traffic obstructions. Depending on the road type and the type and length of the traffic congestion, the route can also be calculated so that it passes through the traffic congestion.
   - ▷ "Avoid tollroads"
     Tollroads are avoided where possible.
   - ▷ "Avoid ferries"
     Ferries are avoided where possible.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

The route criteria can also be changed in the map view:

1. Select the symbol for the route criterion and press the controller.
2. Select a route criterion and press the controller.

Word matching principle

The system supports the word matching principle to make it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored on the navigation DVD as the basis for instant response. The user benefits include:

- ▷ Names of specific locations can also vary from the official versions if you are using a

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

spelling that is customary in another country.

Example:

Instead of "München", you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".

- When you are entering the names of towns and streets the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- The system only accepts name entries beginning with letters that are stored on the navigation DVD. The system will not accept non existent names and addresses.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

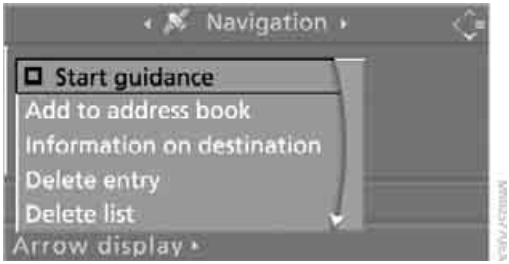
Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
2. Select a destination from the destination list and press the controller or enter a new destination, refer to page 135.

3. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



After the route has been calculated, destination guidance is indicated by arrows or a map display on the Control Display.

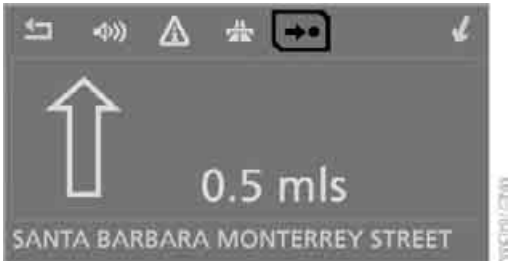
The destination guidance can also be started in the arrow or map display:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

During destination guidance, you can operate other equipment via iDrive at any time. You will be punctually notified of a change of direction by spoken instructions and the display of the direction arrow.

Terminating/continuing destination guidance

In arrow or map display

Select the symbol and press the controller.

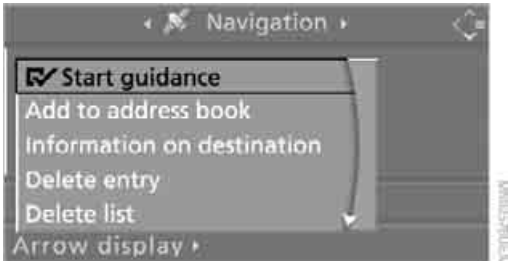


In destination list

This symbol indicates the current destination.

1. Select the current destination and press the controller.

2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

When you park the vehicle before reaching the entered destination, the following question is displayed before beginning the next trip: "Continue guidance to destination?".

The destination guidance starts automatically after a short time.

To start the destination guidance:
Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Displaying route

You have the option of displaying various views of the route during destination guidance.

▷ From another menu, you can change directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items on page 18.◀

Displaying arrow display

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Arrow display" is selected and press the controller.

The arrow display is shown.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off

2 Manually displaying traffic information*

3 Selecting route criteria

4 Starting/ending destination guidance

5 Arrow to destination from a bird's eye view

6 Distance to the next change of direction

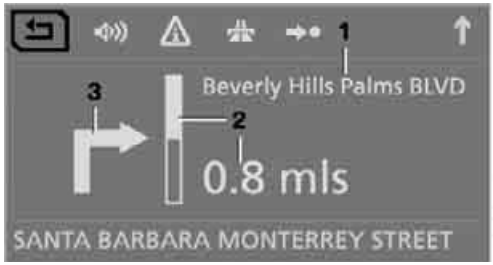
7 Current position

8 Direction of travel

- ▷ Outline arrow:
  Destination guidance on the calculated route.
- ▷ Solid arrow:
  Arrow shows the route to be calculated from a bird's eye view when the vehicle is not located in an area contained on the navigation DVD, e.g. in a multi-level parking lot.

Depending on the equipment, the estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are displayed in the top or bottom line of the Control Display.

Before a change in direction, the representation of the arrow changes.



1 Street name for change of direction

2 Distance up to change of direction

3 Change of direction

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Displaying map view

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired map view is selected:
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"

3. Press the controller.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off
2 Starting/ending destination guidance
3 Map-guided destination selection
4 Showing/hiding information last selected, refer to Selecting destination using information on page 141
5 Changing map display
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"
6 Changing route criteria
7 Manually displaying traffic information*
8 Arrow to destination from a bird's eye view

The estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are shown in the bottom line of the Control Display.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

At scales of less than 250 miles/500 km, you have the option of deciding whether to orient the map to north, toward your current direction of travel, or show the map in perspective. At scales of 250 miles/500 km or greater, the map always points toward north.

Changing map display

Select the corresponding symbol and press the controller.
The next map display is displayed.

Changing scale

Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

Displaying streets and towns/cities of route

You can have the roads along the route displayed during destination guidance.

The distances remaining to be traveled on each individual road are also displayed.

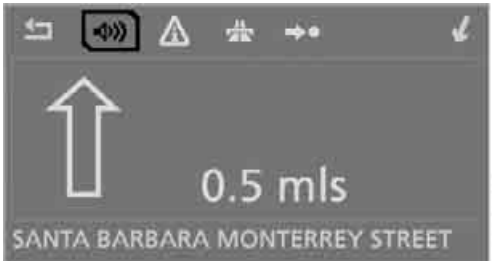
1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route list" is selected and press the controller.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Destination guidance via voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off

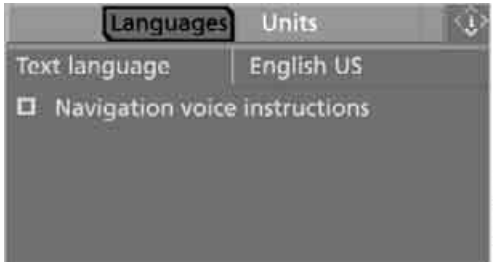


Voice instructions can be switched on or off during the destination guidance in the arrow or map view:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

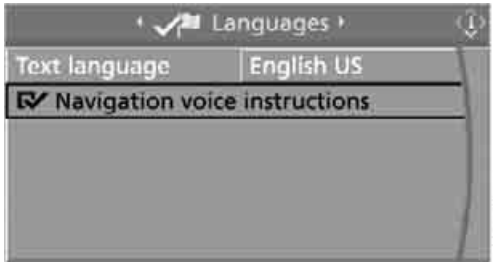
To switch the voice instructions on and off at any time:

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Language / Units" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Navigation voice instructions" and press the controller.



The voice instructions are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use*.

Repeating and canceling voice instructions

With the programmable buttons on the steering wheel you can also make the following settings, refer to page 53:

▷ Repeat the voice instruction:
Press button.

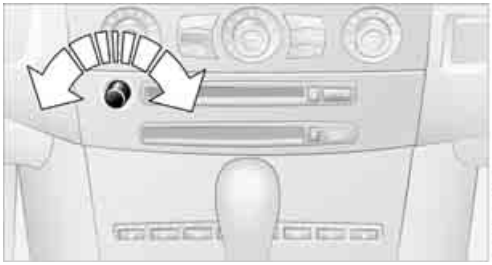
▷ Switch voice instructions on/off:
Press button longer.

Setting volume of voice instructions

The volume can only be adjusted while a voice instruction is being output.

1. Repeat the last voice instruction, if necessary.
2. Turn the knob during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG



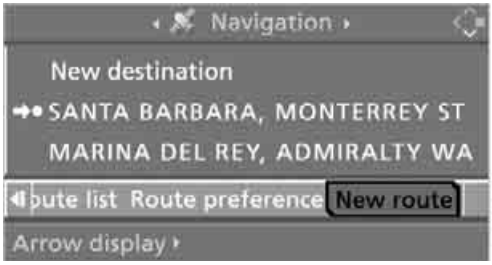
This volume is independent of the volume of the audio sources.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Bypassing route sections

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New route" is selected and press the controller.



3. Turn the controller to enter the desired number and press the controller.

The route is recalculated.

To exit from the menu without changing the route:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Traffic information*

You can display traffic information from radio stations that transmit information of the Traffic Info traffic warning service at any time. This information of the traffic warning services is constantly updated using measuring data from traffic routing centers and information from traffic congestion indicators.
During destination guidance the traffic information located near you on the route is automatically displayed. It can also be displayed manually with iDrive. The traffic information is shown in the map view.

Switching reception of traffic information on/off

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Traffic Info" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.

The traffic information can be transmitted and displayed.

Selecting Traffic Info stations

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Traffic Info" is selected and press the controller.

5. Select a Traffic Info station and press the controller.

"AUTO": automatic selection of the Traffic Info station with the strongest reception.

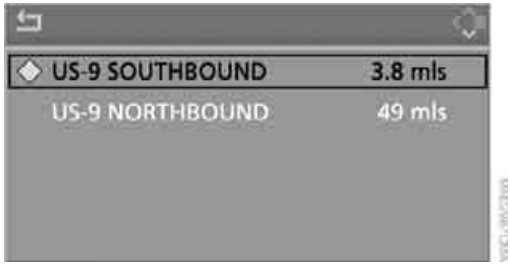
Displaying traffic information manually

During destination guidance

Traffic information can be displayed manually during destination guidance in the arrow or map view.

If the ⚠ symbol is shown with a red border, traffic information is available for the planned route.

Select the ⚠ symbol and press the controller.



The current traffic information is shown on the Control Display sorted according to the distance to the current vehicle position.

During destination guidance, the traffic information on the planned route is marked with a yellow lozenge.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

With destination guidance switched off

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".
3. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.

The current traffic information is shown on the Control Display sorted according to the distance to the current vehicle position.

Displaying detailed traffic information

Select a traffic information item from the list and press the controller.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Symbols for traffic information

- Traffic light failure
- Roadworks
- General traffic obstruction
  Transport of hazardous load
  Oncoming vehicle
- Danger
- Height restriction
- No parking
- Fog
- Strong precipitation
- Slippery road
- Cross winds
- Smog
- Road close
- Slow traffic
- Traffic back up
- Stopped traffic
- Icy roads
- Uneven surface
- Accident
- Narrow road
- Delay
- Police checkpoint

Depiction of traffic information in map view

The traffic information symbols are shown in the map view up to a scale of 100 miles/200 km.

- Traffic event with map scales greater than 5 miles/10 km, arrow points in the direction of travel concerned
- Several traffic events have been received. These are displayed individually at a larger scale.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

With a scale of up to 5 miles/10 km, additional information is displayed. The length, direction and effect of a traffic obstruction are indicated with arrows along the route, e.g.

Slow traffic or other event

Traffic back up

Stopped traffic

Stopped traffic in both directions of travel

Along planned route

Colored symbol with the traffic obstruction symbol.

Outside planned route

- ▷ Map scale up to 5 miles/10 km:
  White symbol with black or gray border with the traffic obstruction symbol
- ▷ Map scale from 10 miles/20 km:
  White symbol with black border and an arrow in the direction concerned

Traffic information during destination guidance

When a traffic obstruction message is issued to the navigation system and "Dynamic route" is not selected, refer to Changing route criteria, page 145, you will receive certain information, such as the length of the traffic congestion, when you are approx. 25 miles/40 km away from the traffic obstruction.
The last possible junction will be displayed shortly before this.

This information is also displayed if you have called up a different application on the Control Display.

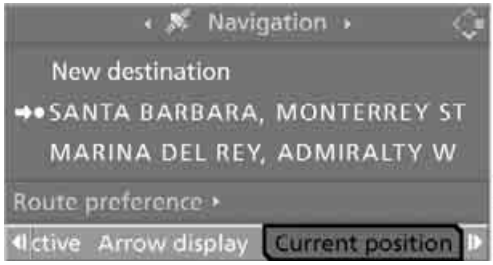
Bypassing traffic congestion

Select "Detour" and press the controller.
The navigation system determines a new route to bypass the traffic congestion.

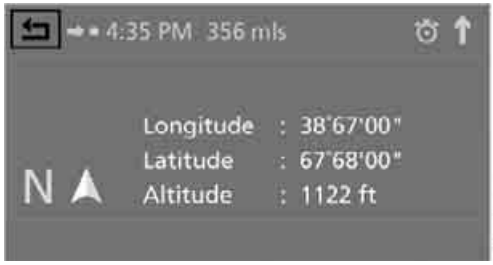
Displaying current position

You can have your current position displayed even when the destination guidance is switched off.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Current position" is selected and press the controller.



The current position of your BMW is displayed.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

If the navigation system is unable to identify a town/city, your current map coordinates will appear.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

You can also have the current position displayed on a map, refer to page 148.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

What to do if ...

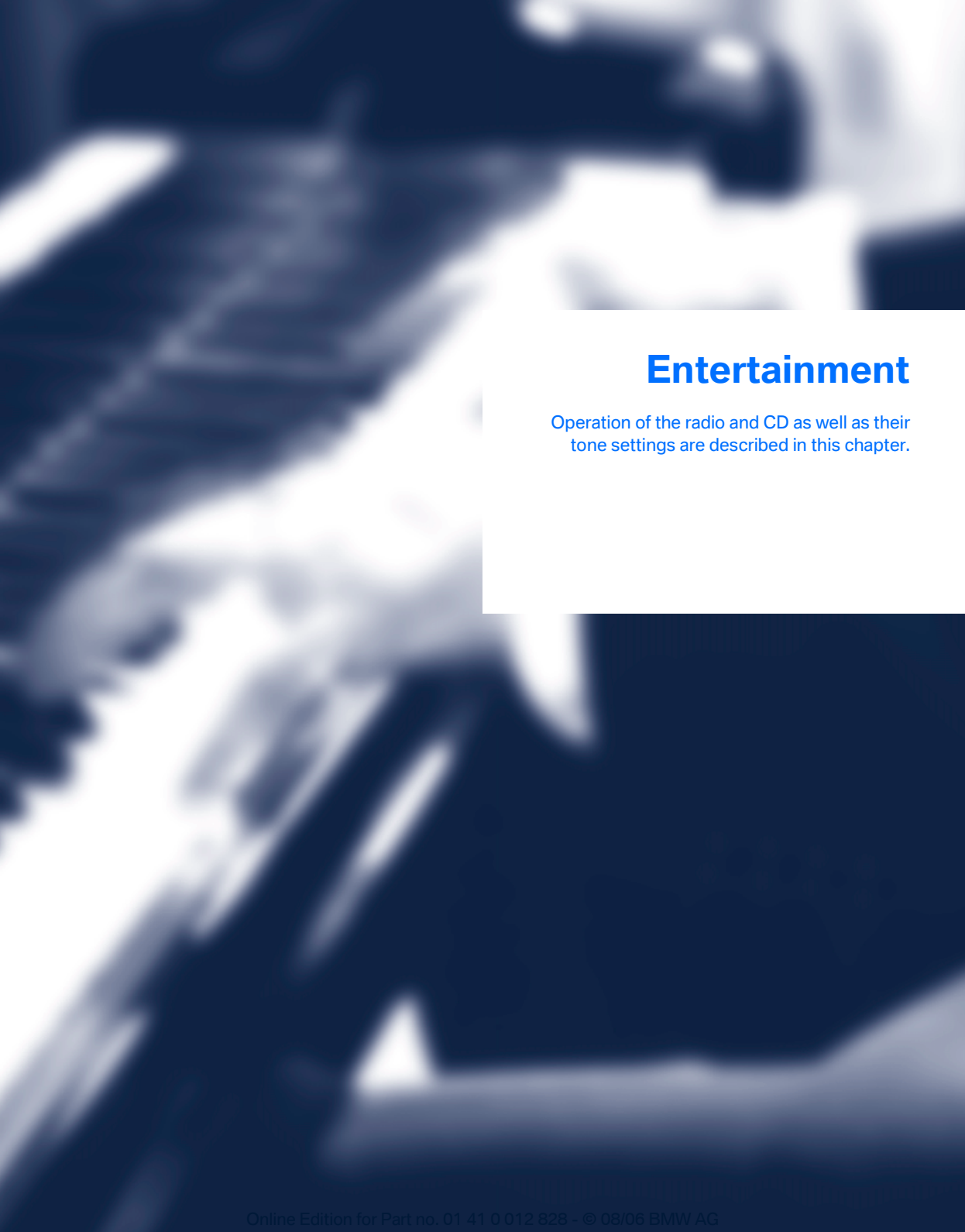
What to do if ...

- a navigation DVD is inserted, but an instruction to insert the DVD appears on the Control Display?
  The navigation DVD may not be the correct DVD for the navigation system. This information is indicated on the DVD label.
- you request the current position of your vehicle, but do not receive a precise display?
  The system is unable to receive enough GPS signals at your current position due to obstructions, your position is not yet available on your navigation DVD, or the system is in the process of calculating your position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- the destination guidance does not accept a destination?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- the destination guidance does not accept an address without the street name?
  On the navigation DVD, no downtown area can be determined for the city or town entered. Enter any street, or a destination such as the railway station in the selected town, and then start the destination guidance.
- you want to enter a destination for the destination guidance, but it is not possible to select the letters for your desired entry?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. In this case, the system will not offer you any letters to choose from. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- the system stops furnishing directions on which way to turn as you approach intersections?
  You are driving in an area that has not yet been completely recorded on the navigation DVD. Instead of an arrow indicating a turn, you will see an arrow which indicates the general direction of your planned route. Or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new recommended route.
- the navigation system does not react to entries?
  If the battery was disconnected, it takes about 10 minutes before the system is once again operational.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG



Entertainment

Operation of the radio and CD as well as their tone settings are described in this chapter.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

On/off and tone

The following audio sources have shared controls and setting options:

- ▷ Professional* radio or Business radio
- ▷ CD player
- ▷ CD changer*

Controls

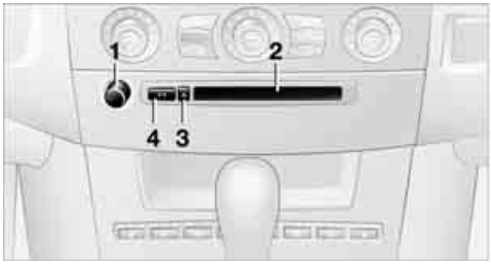
The audio sources can be operated using:

- ▷ Buttons in the area of the CD player
- ▷ iDrive
- ▷ Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11

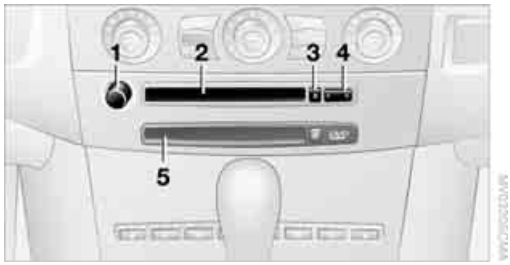
Buttons in area of CD player

The layout of the buttons can vary depending on your vehicle's equipment.

One drive:



Two drives:



1 Entertainment sound output on/off, volume
   - ▷ Press: switch on/off.
     When you switch on, the last set radio station or CD track is played.
   - ▷ Turn: adjust volume.

2 Drive for audio CDs

3 Eject CD

4 Station scan/track search
   - ▷ Change radio station.
   - ▷ Select track for CD player and CD changer.

5 Drive for navigation DVDs

Operation via iDrive

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

You have the following choices:

- ▷ "FM" and "AM": radio reception
- ▷ "WB": Weather Band station
- ▷ "SAT": satellite radio
- ▷ "CD": CD player or CD changer
- ▷ "AUX": external audio device
- ▷ "Set": depending on the audio source, other adjustments can be made, e.g. with the radio: update station with strongest reception, store station, tone control, sample stations.

▷ From another menu, you can change directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items on page 18.◀

From radio readiness, the selected audio source is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Switching on/off

To switch the Entertainment sound output on and off:
Press knob **1** next to the CD player.

This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

For a single drive, the sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes with the ignition switched off.
Switch on the sound output again for this purpose.

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** next to the CD player until the desired volume is set.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

From radio readiness, the setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass, or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The tone settings are set for all audio sources at once.

From radio readiness, the settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing tone settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.

The tone settings can also be selected when you have opened "Entertainment" in the start menu:
Select "Set" and then "Tone", and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Treble and bass

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Treble / Bass" is selected and press the controller.

2. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Treble" or "Bass".

3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Balance and fader

You can adjust the volume distribution in the same manner as "Treble / Bass".

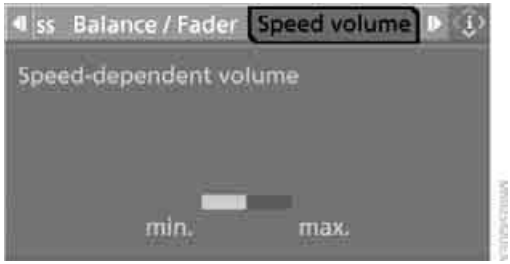
▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution

▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

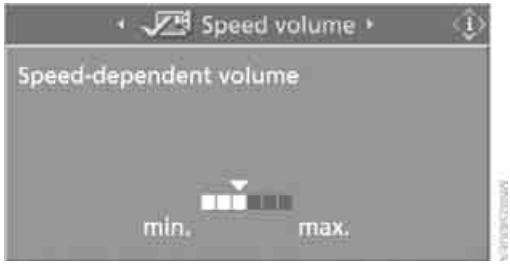
Speed-dependent volume control

The speed-dependent volume control automatically increases the volume with increasing speed. You can set various stages for the increase in volume.

1. Select "Speed volume" and press the controller.



2. Turn the controller:
   The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.



Professional LOGIC7 HiFi System*

You can select a spatial sound effect that improves the spatial acoustics in all frequency ranges.

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

2. Select "Concert hall" or "Theater".

3. Press the controller.
   LOGIC7 spatial sound is switched on.

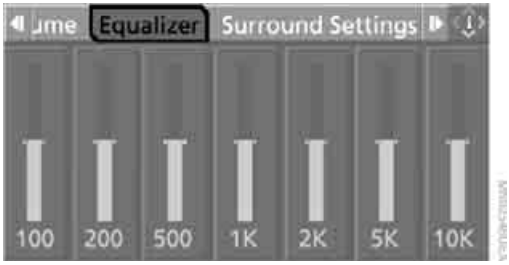
To cancel the spatial sound effect:
Select "Off" and press the controller.

LOGIC7 and the LOGIC7 logo are registered trade marks of Lexicon, Inc., a company of the Harman International Group.

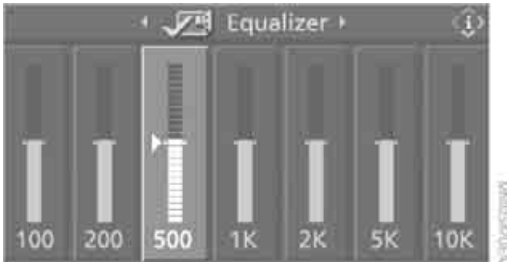
Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

1. Select "Equalizer" and press the controller.



2. Move the controller to the left or right to select the desired frequency range.



3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default settings.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Reset" is selected and press the controller.

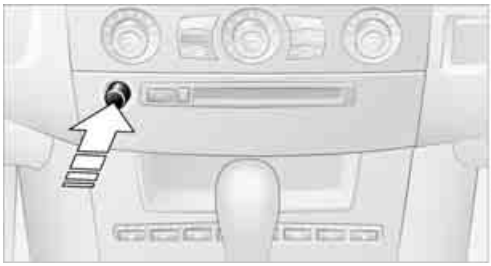
With two drives: select "Yes".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Radio

Your radio provides reception of the FM and AM wavebands.

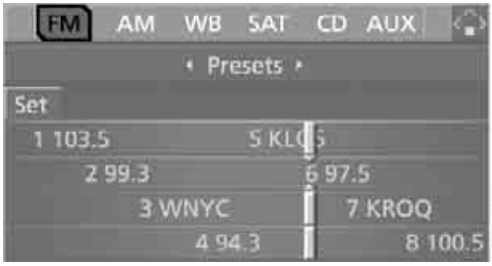
Listening to radio



Press the knob if the sound output is switched off.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "FM" or "AM" is selected.



4. Press the controller.

Stations are shown on the Control Display on the basis of various selection criteria, e.g. "Presets".

If "Autostore" does not display any stations or if the stations displayed can no longer be received, to update the station with the strongest signal, refer to page 165.

Changing stations

Turn the controller.

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations with another selection criterion displayed.

Professional radio*

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "All stations":
  Stations that can currently be received in the "FM" waveband.
- ▷ "Autostore":
  The stations with the strongest received signals in the "AM" waveband.
- ▷ "Presets":
  Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 166.

Business radio

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "Autostore":
  For the Station with the strongest signal, refer to page 165.
- ▷ "Presets":
  Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 166.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Changing selection criteria

1. Change into the second field from the top.
2. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.

Buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next displayed station.
You can also change stations with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Sampling stations, scan

The system automatically plays a brief sample from each of the stations on the current waveband.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

The stations are sampled.

To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the stations, and the radio remains on the current station.

Buttons next to CD player

To sample the stations, press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

To stop scanning, press the button again.

Selecting frequency manually

With "Manual" you can select stations that are received in addition to those displayed.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Manual" and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller to set a certain frequency.

Updating stations with best reception

For Professional radio with "AM" and with Business radio:
If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations with the best reception.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

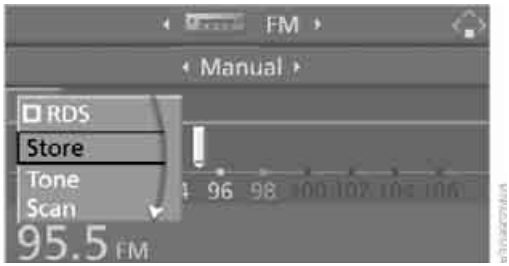
4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.

The display of the stations with the strongest reception is updated. The frequencies of the stations are displayed.

Storing stations

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.
3. Select the desired frequency or station. "Set" is selected.

4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Store" and press the controller.



"Presets" is displayed.

6. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
7. Press the controller.
   The station is stored.

The stations of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

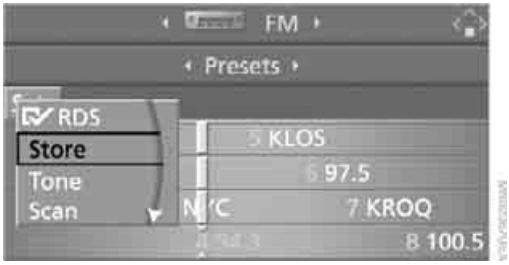
From radio readiness, the stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing a memory position

1. Select "Presets" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired station.
   "Set" is selected.
3. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Select "Store" and press the controller.



5. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
   The number of the memory position appears beside the name or frequency of the station.
6. Press the controller.
   The station is stored.

RDS Radio Data System

RDS transmits additional information in the FM frequency range. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. If the reception is weak or disrupted, it can take some time before the station names are displayed.

Switching RDS on/off*

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "RDS" and press the controller.

RDS is activated.

Automatically sorting stations*

For the "All stations" selection criterion, you can set whether the most frequently used stations are displayed at the beginning.

1. Select "All stations" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Select "Favorites" and press the controller.

The most frequently used stations are shown at the beginning.

Weather news flashes*

Weather Radio is a service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) of the US Department of Trade. Weather news flashes are repeated every 4 to 6 minutes and are routinely updated at intervals of 1 to 3 hours, and more often when necessary. Most stations operate 24 hours a day. In case of a storm, the National Weather Service interrupts the routine weather news and transmits special warning messages instead. If you have a question about NOAA Weather Radio, please contact the nearest office of the National Weather Service. Details are also provided on the Internet at www.nws.noaa.gov.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Calling up weather news flashes

1. Select "WB" and press the controller.

2. Select a station.

The station for weather news flashes may be unavailable in some regions.

High Definition Radio*

Many stations transmit both analog and digital signals. You can receive these stations digitally and with improved sound quality.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field. Turn the controller until "HD radio" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Off" and press the controller.
   ■ The reception of digital stations is deactivated.

HD This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.

With some stations the digital signals are not transmitted simultaneously with the analog signals. If you are in an area in which the selected station is not continuously received digitally, playback changes between analog and digital reception. This can result in repetitions or interruptions. In this case it may be advisable to deactivate digital radio reception.

Updating stations offering digital reception

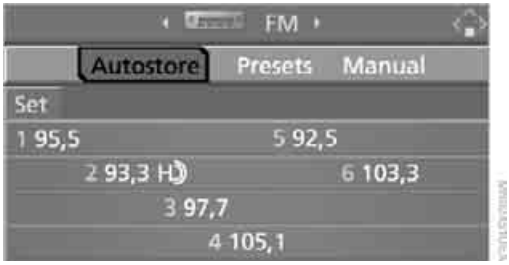
If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations with the best reception.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.

2. Change into the second field from the top.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.



4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Autostore HD" and press the controller.

The display of the stations offering digital reception is updated. This can take up to 2 minutes.

Displaying additional information

With the digital stations, additional information on the current track is displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Select a station and press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.

The information is displayed.

If a digital station is received again when the station is changed, the additional information will be displayed again following a brief interruption.

Satellite radio*

You can receive over 100 different channels with high sound quality.

The channels are offered to you in predefined packages. To receive the channels of your choice, you must have this package enabled.

With this new technology the signal may fail, causing interruptions in reception.◀

Enabling or disabling channels

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Select "SAT".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Press the controller.

The channels are displayed.
✔ These channels are enabled.

Enabling

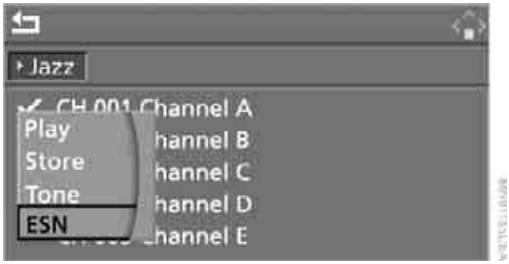
1. Select a channel that has not yet been enabled and press the controller.
   A telephone number and the electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

   ▷ The electronic serial number is required for enabling or disabling.◀

2. To enable the channels:
   Dial the phone number.

Disabling

1. Select an enabled channel and press the controller.



2. Select "ESN" and press the controller.
   The electronic serial number, ESN, is displayed.

   ▷ The electronic serial number is required for disabling.◀

3. To disable the channels:
   Dial the phone number.

Selecting and storing channel

1. Select "SAT" and press the controller.

   Channels are shown on the Control Display sorted on the basis of selection criteria.

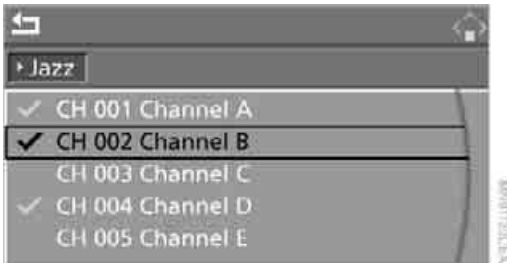
2. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Presets":
     Up to twelve channels you have stored previously.
   - ▷ "All channels":
     All channels are displayed.
   - ▷ "Categories":
     All channels, sorted by categories, e.g. news, jazz.

3. Press the controller.
4. If "Categories" has been selected:
   Select the desired category and press the controller.

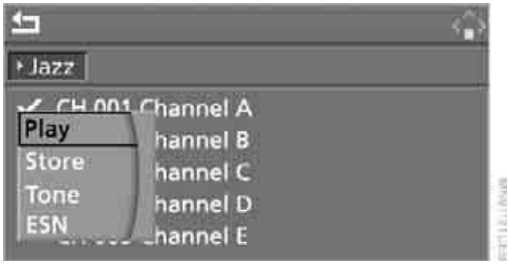
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The channels of this category are displayed.

5. ✔ Select a channel marked with this symbol.

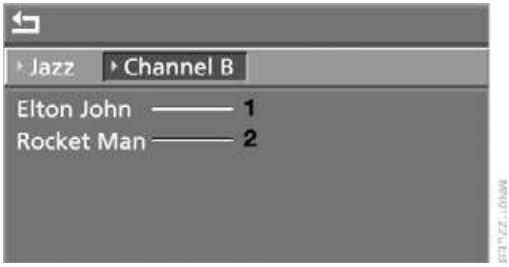


6. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
7. Select "Play" and press the controller.



Additional information

The name of the channel and additional information on the current track are displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

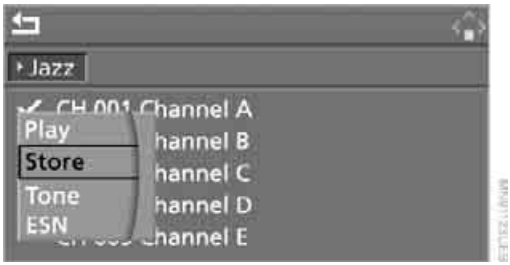


1 Artist

2 Track

Storing channel

1. Select desired channel.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Store" and press the controller.



   "Presets" is displayed.
4. Turn the controller to select a memory location and press the controller.

The channel is stored. The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

Changing channel with buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next enabled channel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Notes

If no signal can be received for more than 4 seconds, a message is displayed on the Control Display.

Reception may not be possible for certain reasons, e.g. environmental influences or topographical conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to tall buildings, near trees, mountains or other sources of radio interference.
Reception is usually possible again as soon as the signal is available again.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

CD player and CD changer*

Listening to CDs

Compressed audio files*

CDs with compressed audio files, i.e. MP3, can be played by the CD player, but not by the CD changer.

CD player: starting CD

With two drives:
The upper drive is for audio CDs.

Insert the CD into the drive with the labeled side up. The CD is automatically pulled in.
Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. For CDs with compressed audio files, it can take up to approx. 1 minute to read in the data depending on the directory structure.

To start playback when there is already a CD in the drive:

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.

4. With a CD changer, change to the second field from the top and turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.
   The CD player is started.

Playback starts automatically if the sound output is switched on.

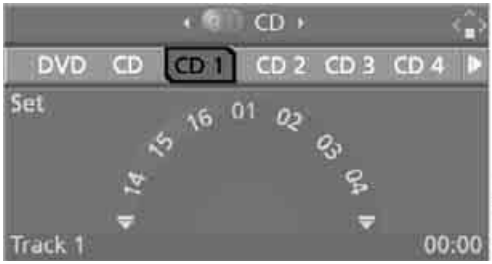
To eject the CD, press the button on the CD player.
The CD emerges slightly from the drive.

CD changer: starting CD

1. Fill the CD magazine and insert, refer to page 177.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
3. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
4. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the desired CD, CD 1 - 6, is selected and press the controller.



At the end of the last track, the next CD will be selected.

If the CD magazine has been newly filled, playback begins with the lowest CD, e.g. CD 1, track 1.

The CD magazine's load status is indicated on the Control Display.

Selecting a track

Buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction repeatedly until you reach the desired track.
The CD will start play at the start of the track. The track is displayed on the Control Display.

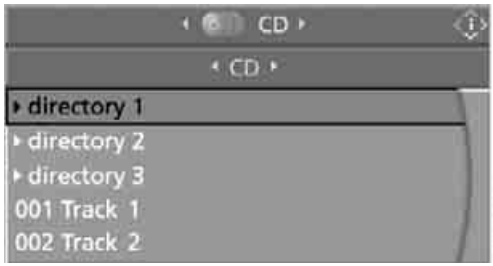
You can also change the track with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Via iDrive

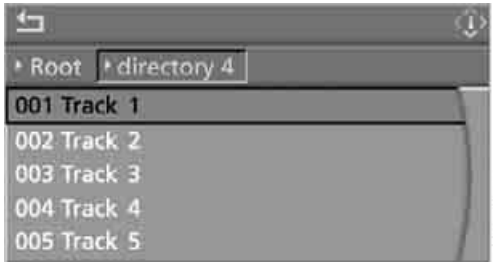
Select a track by turning the controller.

Compressed audio files*

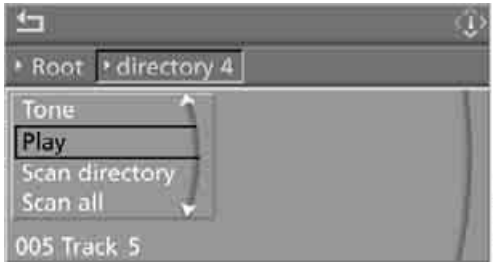
1. Select the directory if necessary and press the controller.



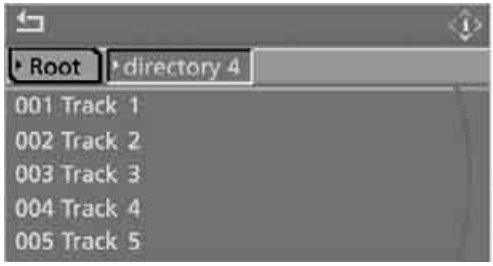
2. Select the track and press the controller.



3. Select "Play" and press the controller.



To change the directory:
Select the directory and press the controller.



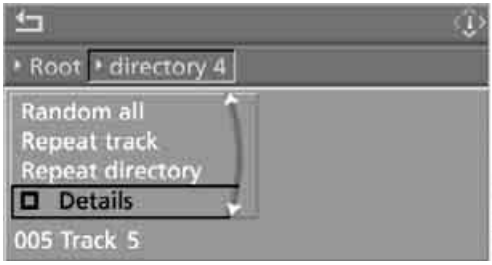
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Displaying information on track*

With compressed audio files, you can display any information stored on the current track, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



The information for the current track are displayed.

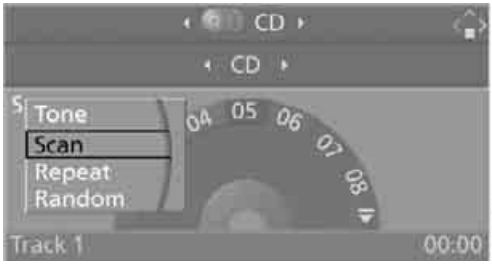
From radio readiness, the setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Sampling tracks, scan

The system automatically plays a brief sample from each of the tracks on the current CD.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.



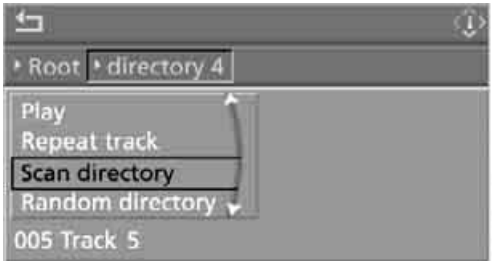
To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the tracks, and the player remains on the current track.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To sample all tracks of the current directory, select "Scan directory" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To sample all tracks of the CD, select "Scan all" and press the controller.



To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan directory" or "Scan all" and press the controller.

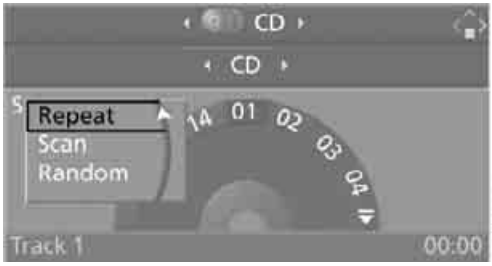
This cancels sampling, and the player remains on the current track.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Repeating a track

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.

2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.



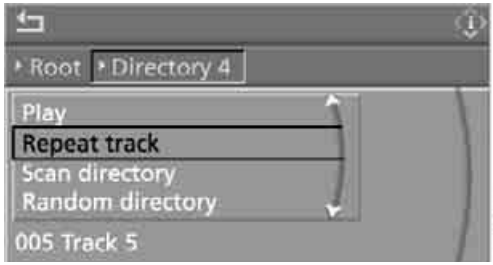
The current track on the CD is repeated.

To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller again.
2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To repeat the selected track, select "Repeat track" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To repeat all tracks of the current directory, select "Repeat directory" and press the controller.



To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" or "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

Random play sequence

In this mode, the tracks on the current CD are played once in a random sequence.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

To stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To play all tracks of the current directory in random order, select "Random directory" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To play all tracks of the CD in random order, select "Random all" and press the controller.

To stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random directory" or "Random all" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons next to CD player:

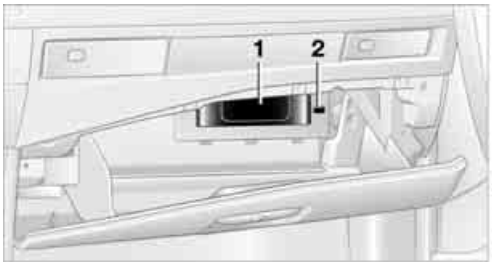
Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

CD magazine

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is installed in the glove compartment.

Removing CD magazine

To insert CDs into the CD magazine **1** or remove them from it, you must first remove the magazine from the CD changer:

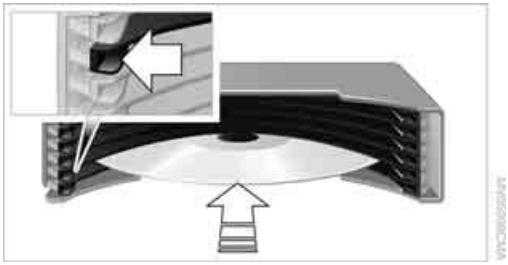


Press button **2**, the CD magazine **1** is ejected.

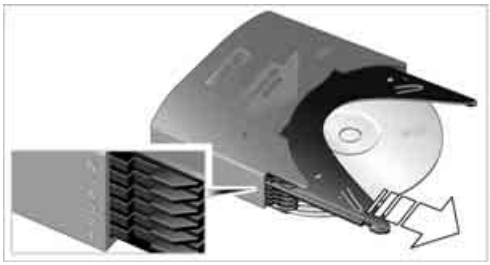
Wait at least 2 seconds before pushing in the magazine again so that the inserted CDs can be read in again.

Inserting/removing CDs into/from CD magazine

When inserting or removing CDs, remember to hold them by their edges, taking care to avoid touching the data side with its reflective CD memory surface.

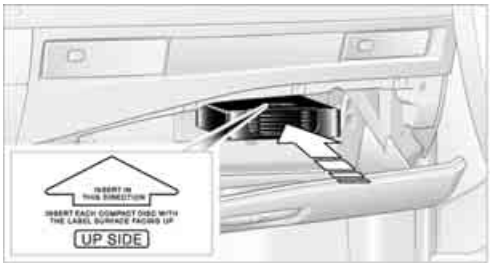


Inserting CDs:
Insert one CD into each compartment of the magazine with the labeled side up.



Removing CDs:
Pull out the desired tray and remove the CD.

Inserting CD magazine



Push in the CD magazine as far as possible in the direction of the arrow.

The CD changer automatically reads in the loaded CDs and is then ready for operation.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Notes

⚠ BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result.
Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat build-up and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. CD singles, as otherwise the CD/DVD or the adapter can jam and may no longer eject properly.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD can jam and will no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this can be due to one of the following causes.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, e.g., inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or high age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

Damaged CDs/DVDs

Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.
Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F /50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

Care

If necessary, clean the reflective scanning side of the CDs/DVDs with a commercially available cleaning cloth by wiping in straight lines from the center outward.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

External audio device

You can connect an external audio device, e.g. an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers. The sound can be adjusted via iDrive.

Connecting

1 Power supply for your additional device: Socket with removable cap

2 Connection for audio playback: Jacks ⅛ in/3,5 mm

To play audio tracks through the car's loudspeaker system, connect the headset or line-out port of the external device to connection **2**.

Starting audio playback

The audio device must be switched on.

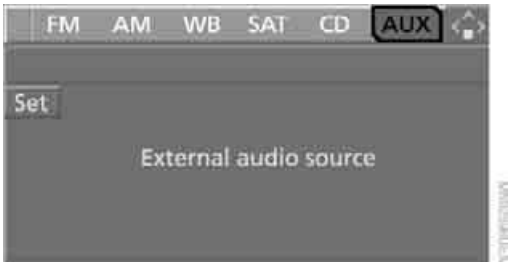
iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

   This opens the start menu.

2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".

3. Select "AUX" and press the controller.



4. Adjust volume and sound if necessary.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Communications

This chapter summarizes how to operate your mobile phone using iDrive or voice control and how to use BMW Assist or TeleService.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Telephoning*

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with a full mobile phone preparation package. After logging on a suitable mobile phone on the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via iDrive, with the buttons on the steering wheel and by voice.

A mobile phone that has been logged on once is automatically detected again with the engine running or the ignition switched on as soon as it is in the vehicle interior. The logon data of up to four mobile phones can be stored simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected simultaneously, the respective last mobile phone logged on can be operated via the vehicle.

Using a phone in your vehicle

Using snap-in adapter*

The so-called snap-in adapter, a mobile phone cradle, enables the battery to be charged and the mobile phone to be connected to the external antenna of your vehicle. This ensures improved network reception and a consistent voice reproduction quality. Ask your BMW center which mobile phones snap-in adapters are offered for.

⚠ BMW discourages the use of mobile phones or other mobile communications devices inside the vehicle without a direct connection to an outside antenna. Otherwise, the vehicle electronics and mobile communication device can influence one another. In addition, there is no assurance that the radiation which results from transmission will be dissipated from the vehicle interior.◀

Avoid operating a mobile phone detected by the vehicle with the keypad of the mobile phone, otherwise malfunctions can occur.

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate operating instructions for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

⚠ Only make entries when the traffic situation allows you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Suitable mobile phones

Ask your BMW center which mobile phones with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package or which mobile phones snap-in adapters are available for. These mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual with a certain software version. Malfunctions can occur with other mobile phones.

Care instructions

You can find what you need to know about caring for your mobile phone in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure and in the mobile phone operating instructions.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone* using:

- ▷ The steering wheel, refer to page 11
- ▷ iDrive, refer to page 16
- ▷ Voice commands, refer to page 191

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Placing phone calls with BMW Assist system*: BMW Assist calls

You can use the BMW Assist system via the hands-free unit for BMW Assist calls.

When the status information "Communication" or "BMW Assist" is displayed in "BMW Service", only BMW Assist calls are possible.

It may not be possible to establish a telephone connection using the mobile phone while a connection is being established to BMW Assist or while a call to BMW Assist is already in progress. If this happens, you must log off the mobile phone from the vehicle if you wish to place a call with the mobile phone.

Commissioning

Logging on mobile phone on vehicle

The following prerequisites must be met:

- ▷ Suitable mobile phone: the mobile phone is supported by the full mobile phone preparation package.
- ▷ The mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The Bluetooth link on the vehicle, refer to page 186, and on the mobile phone is active.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, presettings on the mobile phone are necessary: e.g. via the menu item Bluetooth activated or the menu item Connection not with confirmation.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone model, the setting energy saving mode can, for example, result in vehicle failing to detect the logged-on mobile phone.
- ▷ For logging on, specify any desired number as the Bluetooth passkey, e.g. 1. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required following successful logon.
- ▷ The ignition is switched on.

⚠ Only log on the mobile phone with the vehicle stopped, otherwise the passengers and other road users can be endangered due to a lack of attentiveness on the part of the driver.◀

Switching on ignition

1. Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on the ignition by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

Preparation via iDrive

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.

2. Open the i menu by pressing the controller.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Bluetooth" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Phone" and press the controller. "Connect Bluetooth in this menu" is selected.

Preparation with mobile phone

7. Additional operations must be carried out on the mobile phone and differ depending on the model, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone, e.g. find, connect or link under Bluetooth device.

Logging on

Depending on your mobile phone, you will first be requested consecutively via the display of your mobile phone or the Control Display to enter the Bluetooth passkey you specified.

Display on the Control Display if the Bluetooth passkey can be entered via iDrive:

8. Select "Add device" and press the controller.

9. Enter the Bluetooth passkey. Depending on the mobile phone, approx. 30 seconds are available for entering the Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and on the Control Display.

10. Select "Confirm passkey" and press the controller.
11. Wait a few seconds until the list of the logged-on mobile phones is shown on the Control Display and "Phone" is selected.

To cancel the logon of the mobile phone on the vehicle:
Select "Refuse connection" and press the controller.

The next time you use the mobile phone in the vehicle interior, it will be detected within a maximum of 2 minutes with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transmitted to your vehicle, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone if necessary. This transmission is dependent on your mobile phone, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone if necessary, and can take several minutes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Up to four mobile phones can be logged on consecutively. If you log on a fifth mobile phone, the logon data of the last mobile phone in the list will be deleted, see below.

List of logged-on mobile phones

All mobile phones for which the vehicle has stored the logon data can be displayed. If several logged-on mobile phones are detected by the vehicle simultaneously, you can operate the mobile phone highest up in the list via the vehicle.

You can change the order of the mobile phones in the list. As long as a mobile phone is selected in this list, the mobile phones cannot be operated via the vehicle.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
2. Open the i menu by pressing the controller.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Bluetooth" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
7. Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

8. Select "Move device up" and press the controller.

The selected mobile phone is moved upward by one position.

Logging mobile phone off vehicle

If you no longer want to operate your mobile phone via the vehicle, you can delete the logon data of the mobile phone.

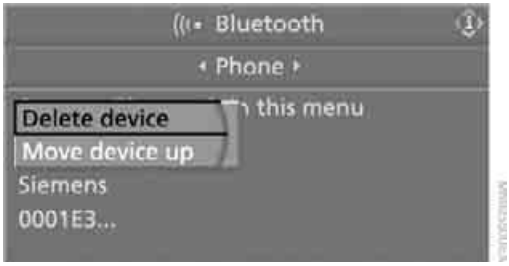
iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
2. Open the i menu by pressing the controller.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Bluetooth" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
7. Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

8. Select "Delete device" and press the controller.
   The logged-off mobile phone is deleted from the list.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The phone book entries you have transmitted from your mobile phone to your vehicle are also deleted in the process.



Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

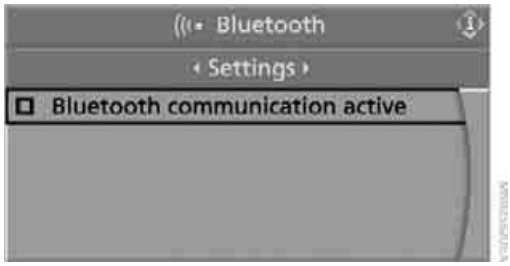
▷ Bluetooth technology is not approved in all countries. Observe the applicable local regulations. Temporarily disconnect the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone if necessary.◀

If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you cannot operate your mobile phone via the vehicle and other devices with a Bluetooth interface can be used via the mobile phone, e.g. a laptop computer.

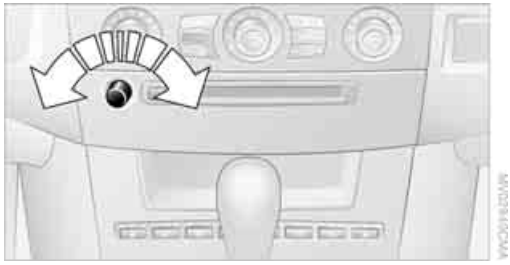
To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between your vehicle and your mobile phone:

1. Remove the mobile phone from the snap-in adapter and switch it off.
2. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
3. Select the i menu and press the controller.
4. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
6. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Bluetooth" is selected and press the controller.

7. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
   ✔ The Bluetooth link is activated.
8. Select "Bluetooth communication active" and press the controller to activate or deactivate the link.



Adjusting volume



Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions via iDrive:

- ▷ Dial phone numbers.
- ▷ Dial phone numbers from the phone book.
- ▷ Dial stored phone numbers, e.g. from the list of accepted calls.
- ▷ End a call.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

When the ignition and radio readiness are switched off, e.g. after removing the remote control from the ignition lock, you can continue an ongoing call via the hands-free system for no more than 25 minutes.

Speech quality

If the person you are talking to cannot understand you well, this may be due to excessively loud background noises. The full mobile phone preparation package can compensate for these noises to a certain degree. To optimize the speech quality during a call, we recommend that you:

- ▷ Reduce background noises, e.g. by closing the windows, reducing the air volume of the automatic climate control or pointing the front vent outlets downward
- ▷ Reduce volume of hands-free system

Requirements

The logon data of the mobile phone are stored in the vehicle and the mobile phone is ready to operate.

The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

The mobile phone is detected by the vehicle.

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

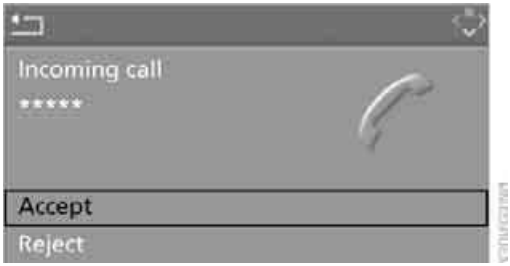
This opens the start menu.

2. Move the controller forward to open "Communication".

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

Accepting a call



Select "Accept" and press the controller.

Rejecting a call

Select "Reject" and press the controller.
The caller is diverted to your mailbox if it has been activated.

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

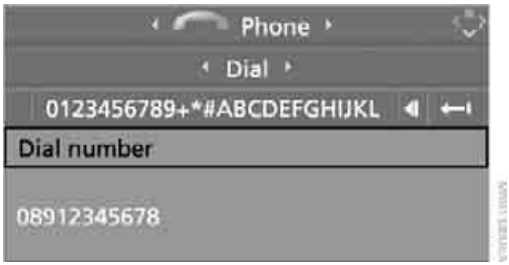
1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

2. Select "Dial" and press the controller.
3. Enter the desired phone number by dialing the individual digits and pressing the controller.
   Always enter the complete phone number consisting of national dialing code, area code, and phone number.
   The letters correspond to the digits on the keypad of the mobile phone.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

To delete an incorrect character:
Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press the controller.

4. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.



For your phone number to be displayed to the person you are calling, the display of phone numbers must be enabled by your service provider.

Ending a call

1. Select the phone number and press the controller.

2. Select "End call" and press the controller.

Dialing a phone number from phone book or a phone number stored in a list

Phone numbers you have called, incoming calls and the entries of the phone book are stored in lists when the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. If the caller is entered in the phone book, the name of the entry is displayed instead of the phone number.

You can select the desired subscriber from the list and establish the connection.

Five lists are available:

- "A - Z"
  The entries of the mobile-phone phone book, consisting of the name and phone number, are sorted alphabetically.
- "Top 8"
  The eight numbers called most frequently from the phone book "A - Z" are automatically stored in the Top 8 list. The list is sorted according to frequency.
- "Redial"
  The last eight phone numbers you have dialed are automatically stored. The last number dialed is at the top of the list.
- "Missed calls"
  The phone numbers of the last eight calls which were not accepted are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.
- "Received calls"
  The phone numbers of the last eight accepted calls are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.

Dialing phone numbers from phone book

The list "A - Z" is available for you phone book entries. The phone book entries appear on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. To limit the number of displayed entries, select the first letter of the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

5. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

If different phone numbers are stored in the mobile phone under one name, e.g. office and home, the name is shown once for each phone number.

You can change a phone number stored in the phone book, e.g. to call a specific extension:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select "Add digits" and press the controller.
5. Change the phone number.
6. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.

Dialing phone numbers stored in a list

To select an entry and establish a connection:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select list and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Top 8"
   - ▷ "Redial"
   - ▷ "Missed calls"
   - ▷ "Received calls"

3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

4. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Deleting individual entries

1. Select the desired entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete" and press the controller. The entry is deleted.

Deleting entire list

1. Select an entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete all numbers" and press the controller.

3. Select "Yes" and press the controller. The list is deleted.

BMW Contact*

If you are not enabled for BMW Assist, you can display several service phone numbers:

- ▷ Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group when you require breakdown assistance
- ▷ BMW center, e.g. when you want to make an appointment for service
- ▷ BMW Hotline* for information on all aspects of your vehicle

If BMW Assist is enabled, refer to page 196.

You can select the displayed service phone number if your mobile phone is logged on in the vehicle:

iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Select "BMW Contact" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Contact Numbers" and press the controller.

5. Select one of the following menu items and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Roadside Assistance"
   - ▷ "Customer Relations"
   - ▷ "Service Request"
6. Select "Call" and press the controller.

Contact is established.

Transmitting phone number via tone dialing method

The tone dialing method is required for access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g. remote checking of an answering machine.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

This function is available when a connection has been established.

1. Establish connection.

2. With one drive:
   Press the controller.
   Select "Keypad" and press the controller.
   With two drives:
   Move the controller backwards until the bottom field is selected.
3. Select the desired character and press the controller.
   Each character is sent immediately and confirmed by a tone depending on the mobile phone model.

Changing between mobile phone and hands-free system

From mobile phone to hands-free system

You can continue calls begun outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle via the hands-free system when the motor is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically changes over to the hands-free mode.

For mobile phones that do not automatically change over to the hands-free mode:

- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone model used, the conversation can also be continued via the hands-free system if necessary. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.
- ▷ Press the button above the storage compartment. Changing over may take several seconds.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

When you telephone via the hands-free system, you can also continue the call via the mobile phone if necessary, depending on the mobile phone model. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

Depending on your mobile phone model, poor reception of the wireless communications network can result in the system changing from the hands-free system to the mobile phone.

Operation by voice*

The concept

You can operate your mobile phone without having to remove your hands from the steering wheel. When making your entries, you will be supported by announcements and questions in many cases.

The same prerequisites as for operation via iDrive apply, refer to page 187.

Symbols in Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Voice commands

Activating system

1. Press the button on the steering wheel. An acoustic signal indicates that you can say commands.
2. Say the command.
   The text or numbers that the voice command system has registered will appear on the Control Display.

Ending/canceling operation by voice

Press the button on the steering wheel
or

›Cancel‹.

In dialogs where text is spoken, not a command, e.g. a name, canceling is only possible using the button on the steering wheel.

Having possible commands read aloud

The system understands default commands that must be spoken word for word.
You can have the possible commands spoken by the system at any point:

›Help‹.

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

The system recognizes digits from zero to nine.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

Example: dialing phone numbers

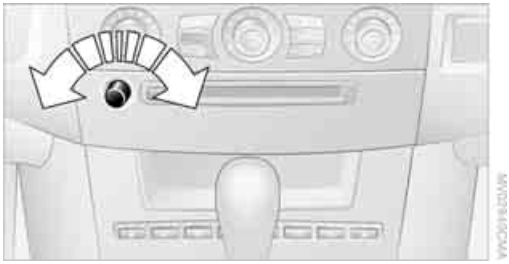
To start the dialog:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Command	Response
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
e.g. ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on equipment: ››123 456 7890. Continue?‹‹ or ››123 456 7890. And next?‹‹
›Dial‹	››Dialing number‹‹

Adjusting volume

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:



Turn the knob during an instruction to select the desired volume.

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
   The dialog for establishing a telephone connection is opened.
2. Say the phone number.
   For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹.
   The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone number

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting input

›Delete‹ is used to delete all the digits entered so far.

Voice phone book

Operating by voice command requires a personal voice phone book. Names and phone numbers of the voice phone book are independent of the mobile-phone or SIM-card memory of your mobile phone.

- ▷ With combined drives for audio CDs and navigation DVDs, the entries are automatically adopted from your mobile phone's memory.
- ▷ With a single drive, the entries must be entered by voice and are independent of your mobile phone's memory. In this case, it is not possible to use voice command either to call phone numbers stored in the mobile phone or to store new numbers.

Creating and editing voice phone book*

Store entry:

An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

1. ›Save name‹.
   The dialog for storing a name is opened.
2. Speak name and repeat entry upon request.
   The spoken length of the names in the phone book must not exceed approx. 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number when prompted.
4. To store the phone number:
   ›Save‹.

Delete entry:

You can delete any entry from the voice phone book.

1. ›Delete name‹.
   The dialog for deleting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Delete all entries:

›Delete phone book‹ deletes all entries in the phone book.

1. ›Delete phone book‹.
   The dialog for deleting phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the repeated prompt with ›Yes‹.

Have entries read aloud and select:

You can have all the entries of your voice phone book read aloud in the order of input and select a certain entry to establish a connection:

1. ›Read phone book‹.
   The dialog for reading phone book is opened.
2. ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read aloud.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Selecting an entry

The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
   The dialog for selecting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Redialing

The ›Redial‹ command calls "Redial".

Notes

The commands in English were available as of this printing. Other languages are currently not available. To operate the mobile phone via the voice command system, refer to page 22.◀

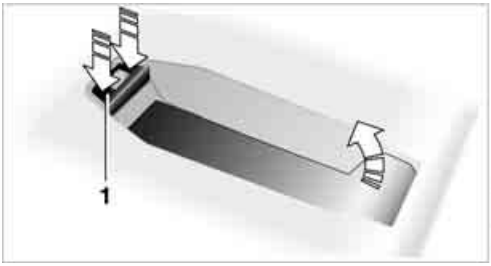
Important for voice commands

For voice commands, keep the following in mind:

- Issue the commands smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass sunroof closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

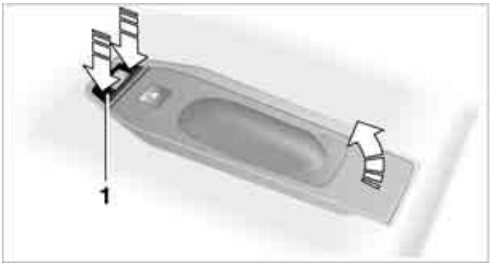
Mounting/removing snap-in adapter

1. Press the area **1** around the button and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front and press down until it engages.

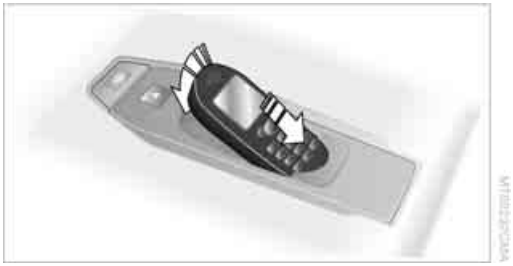
To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press the area **1** around the button.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Inserting mobile phone

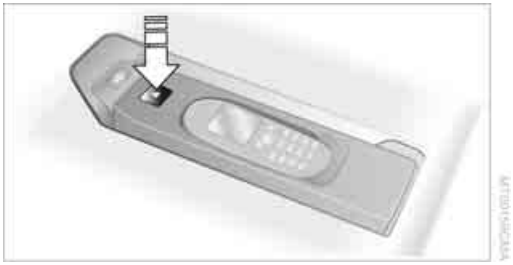
1. Remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector if necessary, so that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.
2. Push the mobile phone with the buttons facing upward toward the electrical connections and press down until it engages.



The mobile phone's battery is charged from radio readiness or with the steering unlocked.

▷ To protect the vehicle's batteries, avoid using the phone when the ignition is switched off.◀

Removing mobile phone



Press button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist provides you with various services. For example, the position data of your vehicle can be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center if an emergency call* has been initiated.

Many functions of BMW Assist depend on the individually agreed contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without you having to visit a BMW center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist service will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Requirements

You can use BMW Assist when the following requirements are met:

- The installed BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- A GPS signal must be available in order for BMW Assist to be activated and updated.
- You have placed an order for BMW Assist at your BMW center or BMW Assist Response Center and signed a service contract. Activation must be completed.
- BMW Assist is activated, refer to page 201.

Services offered

The following services are available via BMW Assist:

- Emergency call, refer to page 231:
  When you press the SOS button, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center. The BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- Automatic emergency call:
  Under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center immediately after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- Roadside Assistance:
  You can call Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group should you require help in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle data and position data are transmitted during this time.
- BMW Hotline:
  For information related to your vehicle, call the BMW Customer Relations.
- TeleService:
  Data on your vehicle's service status or legally mandated inspections are transmitted to your BMW center either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- Vehicle unlocking by the BMW Assist Response Center:
  Inform the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. if your remote control is not available and you want to have the vehicle unlocked. To do this, the vehicle electronics must be ready for operation.
- Vehicle search:
  After your vehicle has been reported to the police as stolen, the BMW Assist Response Center can locate its position. To do this, the vehicle electronics must be ready for operation.

In addition, you can be provided with other services, e.g. the information service or information on route planning, the traffic situation and the weather.
Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center, see below.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

You can also use the services of BMW Assist via the Internet.

Special features of the services offered

The following special features apply to the services:

- ▷ The services offered are country-specific.
- ▷ Voice contact is established or data are transmitted, depending on the equipment and the country. In some countries, it is possible to do both.
- ▷ The data transmitted can, for example, be the vehicle data, your current position or the data of the CBS Condition Based Service.

Using services

Contacting BMW Assist Response Center

You can contact the BMW Assist Response Center with the SOS button.

1. Briefly press protective cover to open. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the button for at least 2 seconds.

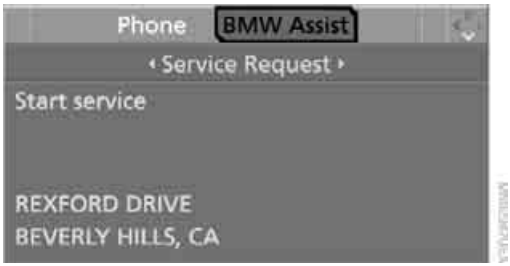
The BMW Assist Response Center is contacted.

Breakdown assistance

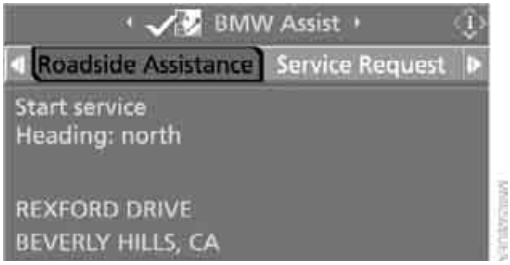
iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Roadside Assistance" and press the controller.



If the location can be determined, the current vehicle position is displayed.

5. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Contact to Roadside Assistance will be established.

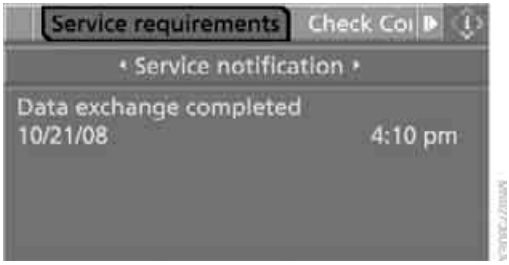
TeleService

Automatic service notification*

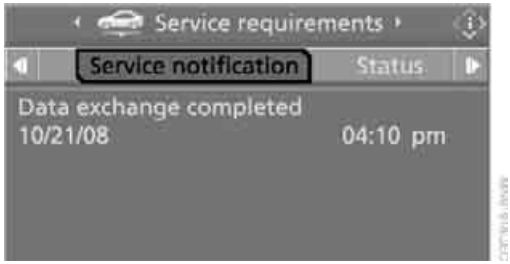
The data on the service status of your vehicle or on legally mandated inspections is transmitted automatically directly to your BMW center prior to the due date. You can check when the BMW center was notified.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.

4. Select "Service" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



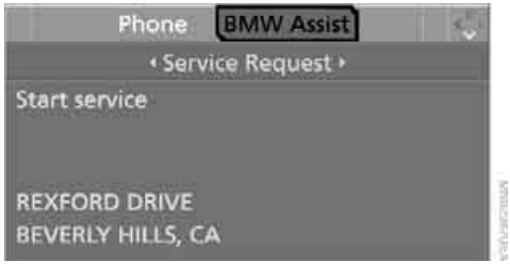
6. Select "Service notification" and press the controller.



Manual service notification

You can transmit data on the maintenance state of your vehicle to your BMW center, e.g. if you want to make an appointment for service.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Service Request"

5. Press the controller.
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

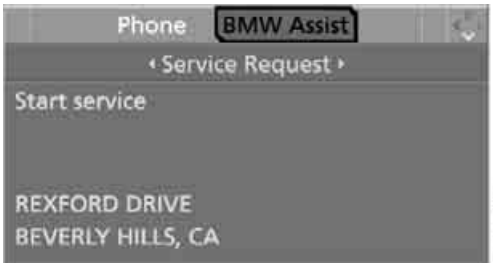
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

The data relevant for service are transmitted. Your BMW center will contact you to set up an appointment for service.

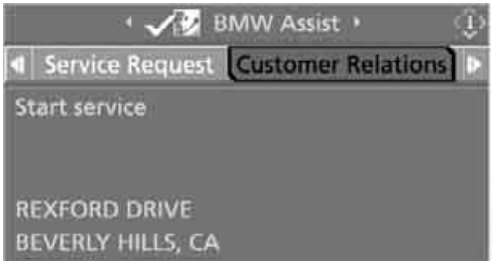
Contacting BMW Hotline

For information on all aspects of your vehicle, you can contact the BMW Hotline.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Customer Relations".



5. Press the controller.
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

You will be connected to the BMW Hotline by the BMW Assist Response Center.

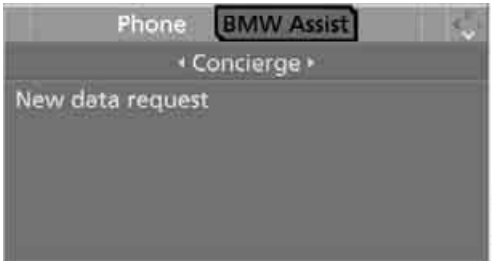
Information service*

When you call the information service of BMW Assist, you can, for example, obtain information on current events, filling stations or hotels and have their phone numbers and addresses transmitted. Reservations can be made at many hotels directly by the BMW Information Service.

The information service must be enabled separately by the BMW Assist Response Center.

Calling up information

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Concierge" and press the controller.

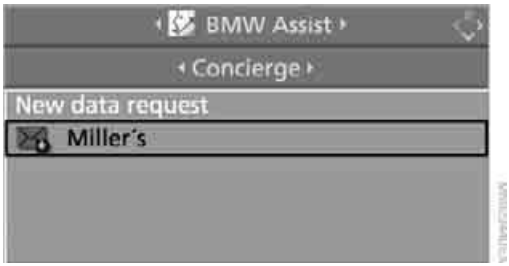
5. Select "New data request" and press the controller.

You will be connected with a BMW information service representative.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Displaying transmitted data

Select the received message if necessary and press the controller.



Dialing phone number or adopting address in destination guidance

1. Select "Options" and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item:

▷ With "Call" you can establish a telephone connection. This requires your mobile phone to be logged on in the vehicle.

▷ With "Select as destination" you can adopt the address in the destination guidance of the navigation system.

Updating BMW Assist

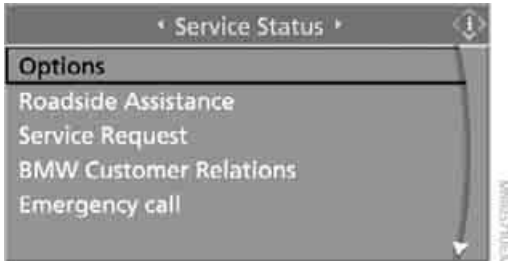
Displaying and updating services

You will be notified of any changes in the services offered by BMW Assist. In this case you should update the services.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Services" is selected and press the controller.

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service Status" is selected and press the controller.
   The current services of BMW Assist are displayed.
6. Select "Options" and press the controller.



7. Select "Update services" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Blocking services*

If you block the services, the connection to BMW Assist is deactivated.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "BMW Services" is selected and press the controller.

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service Status" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Options" and press the controller.

7. Select "Terminate services" and press the controller.

The use of BMW Assist is blocked, and the current vehicle position will not be transmitted during an emergency call*. To cancel blocking and reactivate BMW Assist, see below. This does not affect the contractual agreements.

Reactivate BMW Assist if necessary to log on again.

Activating BMW Assist

For you to be able to use the services of BMW Assist, these must be activated.

Requirements

- ▷ Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- ▷ Leave radio readiness switched on while connecting to the system.

Activating

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Services" is selected and press the controller.

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service Status" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Enable services" and press the controller.
   BMW Assist is activated and data exchange with the service center starts.

Activation takes a few minutes. The status is displayed on the Control Display. If you open another menu, the activation process continues to run in the background.

Displaying vehicle data

When TeleService or BMW Assist is activated, the license plate and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle can be displayed.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

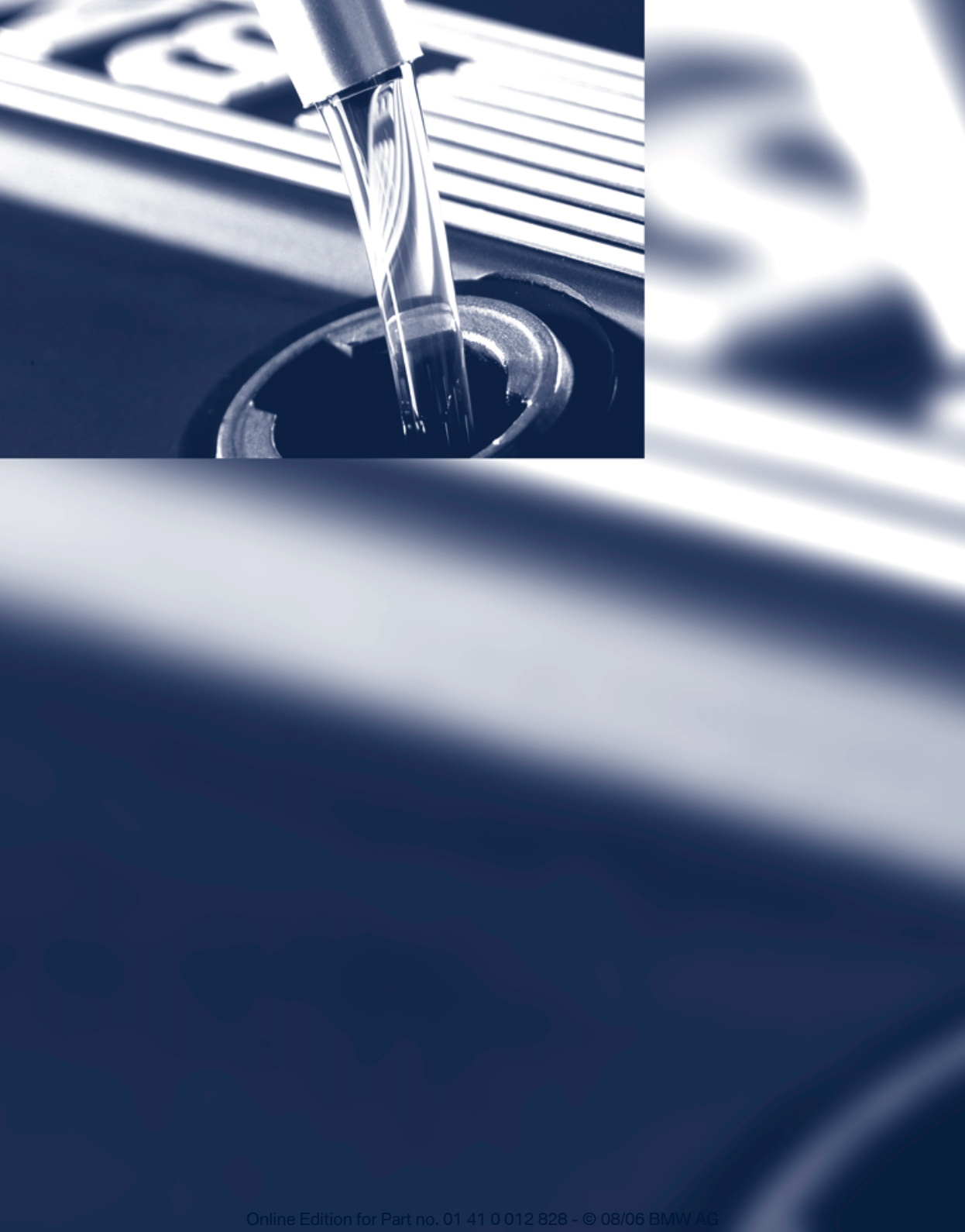
4. Select "BMW Services" and press the controller.

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Profile" is selected and press the controller.

To adjust the license plate number, please contact your BMW center.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Mobility

This section helps you maintain your mobility by supplying important information on vital topics including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and breakdown assistance.

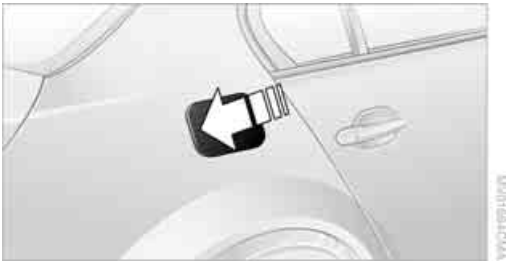
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Refueling

Always switch off the engine before refueling, otherwise no fuel can be filled into the tank and a message is displayed.◀

When handling fuel, always observe all applicable precautionary measures and regulations. Never transport reserve fuel containers in the vehicle. These could become leaky and cause an explosion or a fire in an accident.◀

Fuel filler door



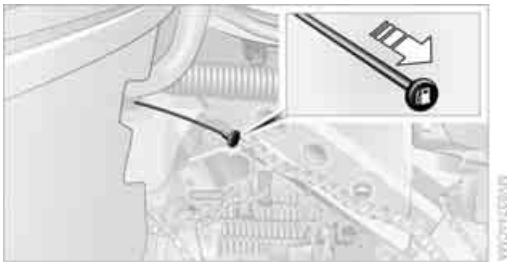
To open and close: press the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

Manual release

If an electrical malfunction should occur, you can unlock the fuel filler door manually.

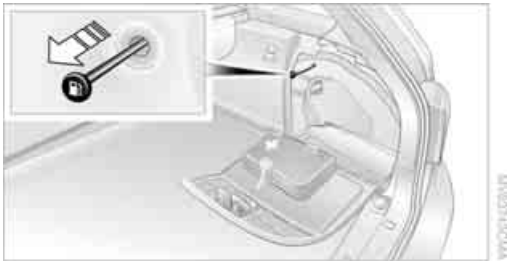
Sedan

1. In the cargo bay, raise the floor mat and the cover located beneath it.
2. Open the snap fasteners of the right side panel and take off the side panel.
3. Pull the knob with the gas pump symbol.



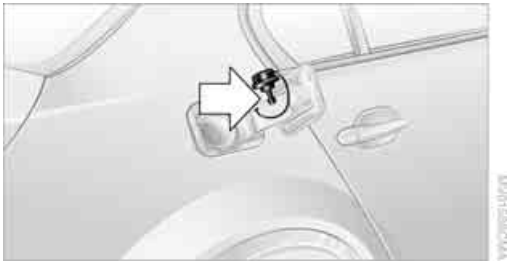
Sports Wagon

1. Unhook the retaining strap*, refer to page 121.
2. Open the right-hand side panel in the cargo bay.
3. Pull the knob with the gas pump symbol.



Observe the following when refueling

When handling fuels always observe any safety guidelines posted at the service station.◀



Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler door.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid raising the filler nozzle during refueling, otherwise this leads to

- ▷ premature pump shutoff
- ▷ a reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 18.5 gallons/70 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx. 2.1 gallons/8 liters. 550i: approx. 2.6 gallons/10 liters reserve capacity.

⚠ Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Fuel filler cap

Closing

Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

⚠ Do not jam the strap attached to the fuel filler cap between the fuel filler cap and the vehicle. A message* is displayed if the cap is loose or missing.◀

Fuel specifications

⚠ Do not use leaded gasoline, otherwise permanent damage to the catalytic converter will result.
Do not use E85, i.e. fuel that consists of 85 % ethanol, or Flex Fuel. Otherwise permanent damage to the engine and the fuel supply system will result.◀

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 91

This gasoline is highly recommended.

However, you may also use gasoline with less AKI. The minimum AKI Rating is 87.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no affect on the engine life.

⚠ Do not use gasoline below the specified minimum quality, otherwise engine damage can result.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10% ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8% oxygen by weight, that is, 15% MTBE or 3% methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

⚠ The use of poor-quality fuels may result in drivability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter drivability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.
Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure

Information for your safety

The condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure are crucial not only to the tire's service life, but also to driving comfort and most importantly, driving safety.

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure increases.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it as needed, even on the compact tire*: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. Otherwise driving instability or tire damage, and therefore accidents, can result from incorrect tire inflation pressures. Do not drive with depressurized, i.e. flat tires, except run-flat tires. A flat tire will seriously impair your vehicle's handling and braking response. Attempts to drive on a flat tire can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle.◀

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 91, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 93.◀

Pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes and tire brands respectively approved and recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressure for your tires, observe the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle
- Load conditions
- Maximum allowable driving speed

Tire inflation pressures for speeds up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the column Traveling speeds up to max. 100 mph/160 km/h to achieve optimum driving comfort.

These pressure specifications can be found on the door post when you open the driver's door.

The permissible top speed for these tire inflation pressures is 100 mph/160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed, otherwise tire damage and accidents may result.◀

Tire inflation pressures for speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits, otherwise violations of the law could occur.

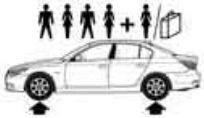
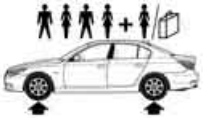
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

525i/530i

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 17 95 W 225/55 R 16 95 H M+S 245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL	32/220	33/230	32/220	33/230	35/240	42/290
225/50 R 17 94 V M+S 225/50 R 17 94 W 245/40 R 18 93 W 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S	32/220	36/250	32/220	35/240	36/250	44/300
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 W Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 W	32/220	33/230	32/220	33/230	36/250	42/290
Front: 245/35 R 19 93 Y XL Rear: 275/30 R 19 96 Y XL	32/220	38/260	32/220	33/230	35/240	42/290
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 241.						

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

525xi/530xi

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 17 95 W 245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL	32/220	35/240	32/220	33/230	35/240	42/290
225/50 R 17 94 V M+S 225/50 R 17 94 W 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S 245/40 R 18 93 W	32/220	36/250	32/220	36/250	38/260	45/310
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 W Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 W	32/220	35/240	32/220	33/230	38/260	42/290
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 241.						

530xi Sports Wagon

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
225/50 R 17 94 W M+S 225/50 R 17 94 W 245/45 R 17 95 W 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S 245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL	32/220	39/270	32/220	39/270	38/260	45/310
245/40 R 18 93 Y	32/220	39/270	32/220	36/250	35/240	42/290
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 241.						

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
Compact wheel*: T 135/80 R 17 102 M	61/420					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/40 R 18 93 Y	32/220	38/260	32/220	35/240	33/230	41/280
245/45 R 17 95 W 245/45 R 17 99 V M+S XL 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S 225/50 R 17 94 W M+S 225/50 R 17 94 W 225/50 R 17 94 H M+S	32/220	38/260	32/220	38/260	38/260	45/310
Front: 245/40 R 18 93 Y Rear: 275/35 R 18 95 Y	32/220	35/240	32/220	32/220	33/230	38/260
Front: 245/35 R 19 93 Y XL Rear: 275/30 R 19 96 Y XL	35/240	39/270	33/230	38/260	38/260	45/310
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 241.						

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

e.g. 225/50 R 17 94 W

- Nominal width in mm
- Aspect ratio in %
- Belted construction – radial
- Rim diameter in inches
- Carrying capacity ID-code (not in ZR tires)
- Speed code letter (in ZR tires before the R)

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

e.g. DOT xxxx xxx 3406

Manufacturer code for tire make

Tire size and tire design

Tire age

Tire age

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding: DOT... 3406 indicates that the tire was manufactured in week 34 of 2006.

BMW recommends that you replace all tires after 6 years at most, even if some tires may last for 10 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC – run-flat tires

You will recognize run-flat tires by a circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire, refer to page 213.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

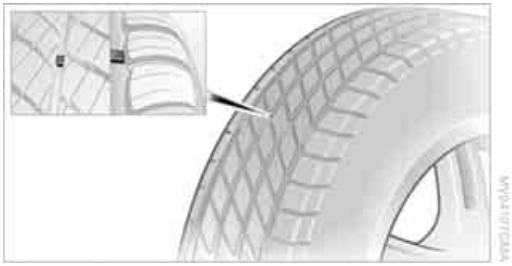
Indicates specially reinforced tires.

Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 0.12 in/3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 0.12 in/3 mm there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.
When winter tires wear down past a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, they become perceptibly less suitable for winter conditions. For the sake of safety, new tires should be installed.



Wear indicators at the tread-groove base, refer to arrow, are distributed over the tire's circumference and are marked on the side of the tire with TWI – Tread Wear Indicator. If the tire tread has been driven down to the wear indicators, a tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm has been reached.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazards and consequential damages.
Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. These kinds of problems may also be signaled by other changes in vehicle response, such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

⚠ In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there. Tire damage can be extremely dangerous for vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Run-flat tires*

You will recognize run-flat tires by the circular symbol containing the letters RSC on the side of the tire.
Run-flat tires consist of partially self-contained tires and special rims. The sidewall reinforcement ensures that the tire retains some residual safety in the event of pressure drop and driving remains possible to a restricted degree.

To continue driving with a damaged tire:

- ▷ With Flat Tire Monitor, refer to Indication of a flat tire, page 92
- ▷ With Tire Pressure Control, refer to Message with low tire inflation pressure, page 94

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

New wheels and tires

Have new wheels and tires installed only by your BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

BMW does not recommend that you use retreaded tires, as driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include the possibly different tire casing structures and the often wide variations in their age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

The right wheels and tires

BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions than the approved units – these differences could lead to body contact, and with it the risk of severe accidents. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot be held liable for driving safety.◀

You can inquire about the right wheel/tire combination at your BMW center.

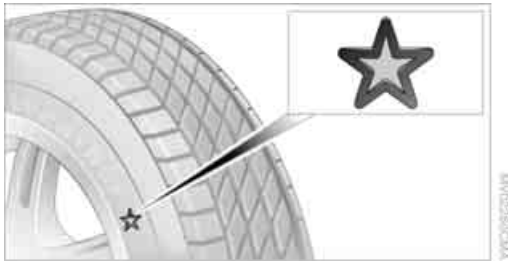
The correct wheel/tire combination also affects various systems whose function would otherwise be impaired, e.g. ABS, DSC or xDrive.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Wheels with electronics for TPM Tire Pressure Monitor

When mounting new tires or converting from summer to winter tires or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise the Tire Pressure Monitor cannot detect a flat tire, refer to page 92. Your BMW center will be happy to advise you on this subject.

Recommended tire brands



Certain tire makes are recommended by BMW depending on the tire size. You can recognize these from the clearly visible BMW marking on the tire sidewall.

When used properly, these tires comply with the most demanding standards for safety and vehicle response.

Run-flat tires

When mounting new tires, or changing from summer to winter tires or vice versa, use run-flat tires for your own safety. In addition, no spare tire is available in case of a flat tire. Your BMW center will be glad to advise you.

For safety reasons, BMW recommends that you do not have damaged run-flat tires repaired; they should be replaced.◀

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for use in cold winter driving conditions. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Pay attention to speed

Always observe the maximum permissible speed for the winter tires, otherwise tire damage may occur, which can result in accidents.◀

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels. Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Rotating wheels between axles

BMW does not recommend moving the front wheels to the rear or vice versa, as otherwise the handling characteristics may be impaired.

Snow chains*

BMW only tests certain fine-link snow chains, classifies them as road-safe and recommends them. Consult your BMW center for more information.

Use is only permissible in pairs on the rear wheels.

Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h with the chains mounted.

After mounting snow chains, do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, otherwise incorrect displays can occur.
When driving with snow chains, it may be practical to briefly activate DTC, refer to page 88.◀

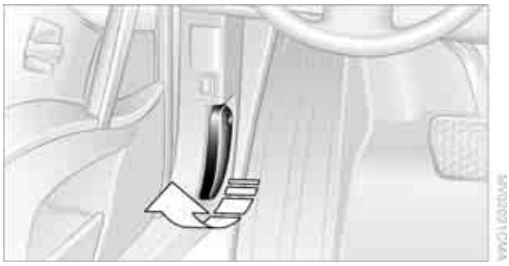
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Under the hood

Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the required professional technical training.
If you do not know what repair procedures to follow, have work on your vehicle done only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

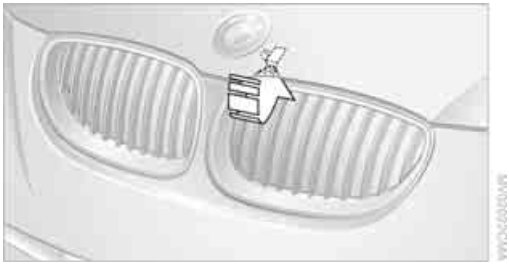
Hood

Releasing



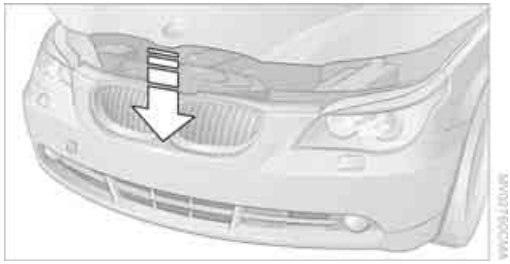
Pull lever.

Opening



Press the release handle and open the hood.

Closing



Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear, otherwise injuries may result.
If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving your vehicle, you should stop at once and close it securely.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Engine compartment

1 Filler neck for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil

2 Starting-aid terminal, refer to page 232

3 Washer fluid reservoir of the headlamp and windshield cleaning systems, refer to page 67

4 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 219

Engine oil

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

Checking engine oil level

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic oil level check.

The condition for the most accurate indication of the oil level possible is measurement with the engine at operating temperature, i.e. following an uninterrupted drive of at least 6 miles/10 km. You can display the oil level on the Control Display while driving or when stopped on a level surface with the engine running.

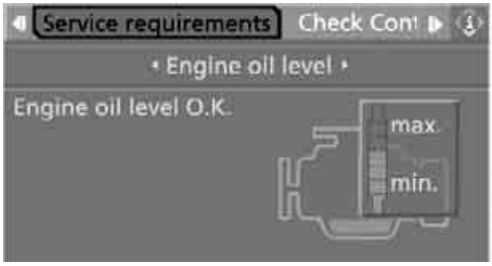
iDrive, for explanation of principle, refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Info sources" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Service" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



6. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until "Engine oil level" is selected and press the controller. The oil level is displayed.

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level O.K."

▷ "No measurement available: Updating engine oil level measurement...":
Engine oil level is being measured. This process can take approx. 3 minutes when stopped on a level surface and approx. 5 minutes while driving.

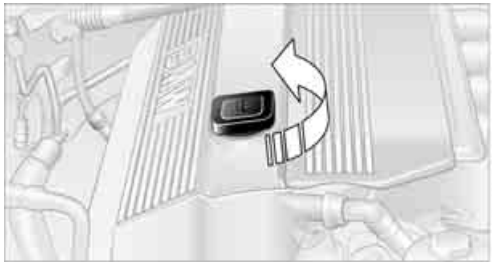
▷ "Oil level at the minimum! Refill with 1 quart of engine oil.":
Add 1 US quart/liter of engine oil at the next opportunity.

▷ "Engine oil level too high":

⚠ Have the vehicle checked immediately, otherwise engine damage may result if too much oil has been added.◀

▷ "Please observe recalculated service interval for engine oil":
Do not add engine oil. Continued driving is possible. To do this, observe the recalculated remaining mileage until the next oil change service, refer to page 220. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil



Do not add 1 US quart/1 liter of oil until a corresponding message is shown on the Control Display.

⚠ Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km, otherwise the engine could be damaged.◀

⚠ Continuous exposure to used oil has caused cancer in laboratory testing.
For this reason, any skin areas that come into contact with oil should be thoroughly washed with soap and water.
Keep oil, grease etc. out of reach of children and observe the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks.◀

Oil change

Have oil changed only at your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Approved engine oils

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW continuously approves specific oils after confirming their suitability for use in its vehicles with extensive testing.

⚠ Do not use oil additives, as these may result in engine damage.◀

Only use approved BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil.

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is unavailable, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils between oil changes. Only use oils of the specification API SH or higher.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Your BMW center will be happy to answer detailed questions on BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils.◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website at www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity is a measure of an oil's flow rating and is specified in SAE grades.

The choice of the right SAE grade is based on the climatic conditions in the region in which you normally drive your BMW.

Approved oils belong to the SAE grades 5W-40 and 5W-30.◀

These oils can be used for driving at all outside temperatures.

Coolant

Do not add coolant to the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

Coolant is comprised of water and coolant additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center for suitable additives.

Only use suitable additives, otherwise engine damage may result. The additives present a health hazard; observe the instructions on the containers.◀

Comply with the appropriate environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant additives.◀

Checking coolant level

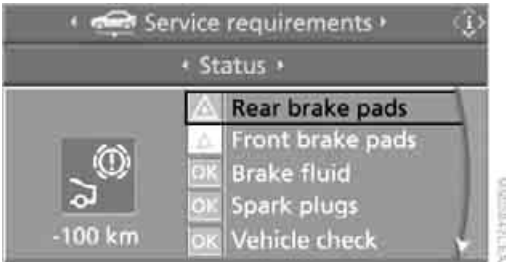
1. The engine must be at ambient temperature.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct when the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks, refer to the diagram adjacent to the filler neck.

4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level – do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Maintenance

BMW maintenance system



The BMW maintenance system supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The service schedule also includes operations related to the vehicle's comfort and convenience features, such as replacement of the filters for the inside air. The ultimate objective is to ensure economical maintenance by providing the ideal service for your vehicle.

Should the day come when you decide to sell your BMW, a complete dealer service history will prove to be an asset of inestimable value.

CBS Condition Based Service

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

You can set the Control Display to show remaining distances and times of selected maintenance intervals and legally mandated deadlines, refer to page 78:

- Engine oil
- Brake pads, front and rear separately
- Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter
- Brake fluid
- Spark plugs
- Vehicle check
- Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations

Service data in remote control

Your vehicle stores the information required maintenance continuously in the remote control during driving. After accessing the data stored in the remote control, your BMW Service Advisor can suggest precisely the right array of service procedures for your own individual vehicle. You should therefore hand over the remote control you last used to drive to the BMW Service Advisor when you take your vehicle in for service.

Make sure the date is set correctly, refer to page 84, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.◀

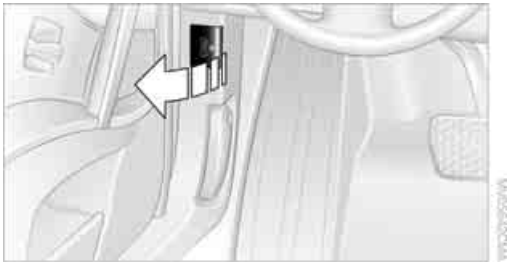
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.
Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnostics interface



Components which are decisive for the exhaust-gas composition can be checked via the OBD socket with a device.

This socket is located to the left on the driver's side, on the underside of the instrument panel under a cover.

Exhaust-gas values

The warning lamp lights up. The exhaust-gas values worsen. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This is a sign of excessive misfiring of the engine. In this case you should reduce speed and drive to the nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Heavy engine misfiring causes serious damage to the emission-relevant components, especially the catalytic converter, within a short time.

▷ If the fuel filler cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system will assume that fuel vapor escapes. Then a display lights up. If the cap is then tightened, the display will go out within a few days.◀

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring and diagnosis modules, or with a device for recording or transmitting certain vehicle data or information. If you have also signed a contract of participation for BMW Assist, certain vehicle data can be transmitted or recorded to enable corresponding services.

Care

Important information on the care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Replacing components

Onboard toolkit

Sedan

The onboard toolkit is located in the luggage compartment lid.

Loosen the wing nut to open.

Sports Wagon

The onboard toolkit is located in the left side panel of the cargo bay.

Wiper blade replacement

Front

1. Fold the wiper arm out and grasp firmly.
2. Press the safety tabs together while sliding the wiper blade toward the front to disengage it.
3. Mount the new wiper blade and slide in until it is heard to engage.

Rear*

1. Lift off the wiper arm completely and pull off the wiper blade, refer to arrow.
2. Mount the new wiper blade and press on until it is heard to engage.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. You must be duly diligent in replacing them. BMW recommends having your BMW center perform any work that you do not feel competent to perform yourself or that is not described here.

Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean cloth, napkin, etc., or hold the bulb by its metal socket.◀

A selection of replacement bulbs is available at your BMW center.

Whenever you perform any work on the electrical system, turn off the systems/consumers involved to prevent short circuits from occurring. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

For care and maintenance of the headlamps, please follow the instructions in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.

For bulbs for which changing is not described, and for checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.◀

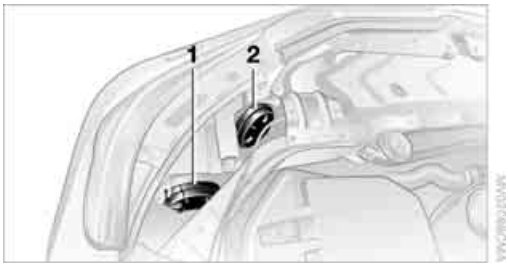
Light-emitting diodes LEDs

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours, as irritation of the retina could result.◀

Halogen headlamps

The illustration shows the left-hand side of the engine compartment.



1 Cover cap for low beams

2 Cover cap for high beams

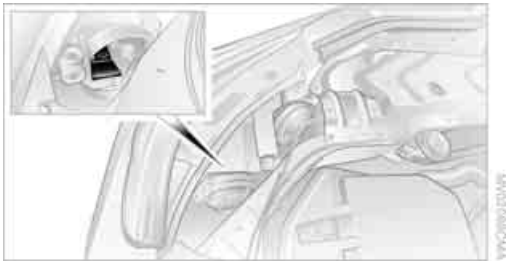
Turn the cover cap to the left and remove.

Always wear gloves and eye protection – the atmosphere within the H7 bulb is pressurized. Otherwise there is a danger of injuries if the bulb is accidentally damaged during replacement.◀

Low beams

H7 bulb, 55 watts

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.



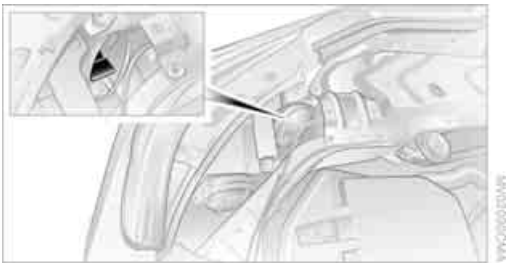
2. Remove and replace the bulb.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

High beams

H7 bulb, 55 watts

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.



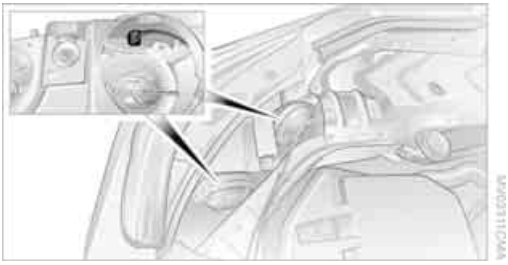
2. Remove and replace the bulb.

Parking and roadside parking lamps

5-watt bulbs, W5W

One bulb each is located above the low beams and high beams.

1. Turn the cover cap for low beams or high beams to the left and remove.
2. Pull out the bulb holder.



3. Remove and replace the bulb.

Xenon lamps*

The service life of these bulbs is very long and the probability of a failure is very low, provided that they are not switched on and off an unusual number of times. If one of these bulbs should nevertheless fail, it is possible to continue driving with great caution using the fog lamps, provided traffic laws in your area do not prohibit this.

⚠ Have work on the xenon lighting system performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is a danger of fatal injuries when work is carried out improperly.◀

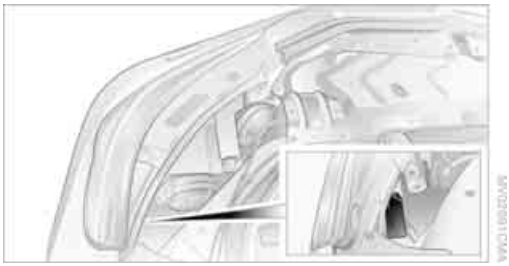
Parking and roadside parking lamps

In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Turn signals, front

21-watt bulb, PY21W

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.

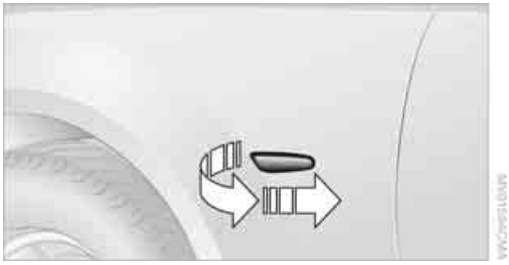


2. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Side-mounted turn signals

5-watt bulb, W5W

1. Press back against the front edge of the lamp with the tip of your finger, then pivot it out.



2. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.
3. Remove the bulb for replacement.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Side marker lamps, front and rear

To replace, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Tail lamps

Sedan

- Turn signals: 21-watt bulb, PY21W
- Backup lamps: 16-watt bulb, W16W
- Other lamps: 21-watt bulb, P21W

1 Turn signal
2 Rear lamp and brake lamp
3 Rear lamp and brake lamp
4 Backup lamp
5 Reflector
6 Roadside parking lamp, rear lamp and brake lamp

Sports Wagon

- Turn signals: 21-watt bulb, PY21W
- Backup lamp and brake lamp **3**: 16-watt bulb, W16W
- Other lamps: 21-watt bulb, P21W

1 Turn signal
2 Rear lamp and brake lamp
3 Brake lamp
4 Backup lamp
5 Reflector
6 Roadside parking lamp, rear lamp and brake lamp

Center brake lamp

This lamp uses LED technology for operation. In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Fender-mounted lamps

Sedan

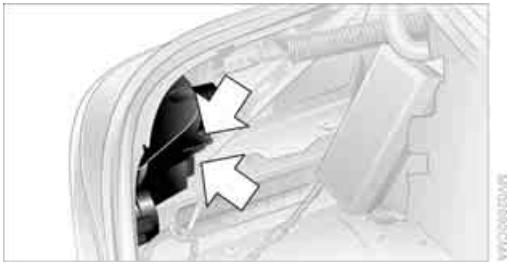
The illustration shows the left-hand side of the cargo bay.

All the bulbs are integrated into a central bulb fitting.

1. Lift up floor mat.
2. Undo the quick-release fasteners of the side panel and pull out the panel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

3. Press together the two clips at the top and bottom on the bulb holder and remove the bulb holder.



4. Backup lamps:
   Remove and replace the bulb.
   Other lamps:
   Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Sports Wagon

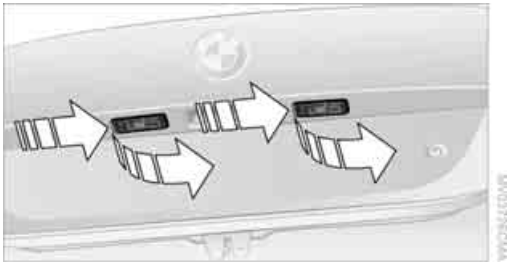
1. Right side: unhook the retaining strap*, refer to page 121.
2. Open the side panel.
3. Turn the bulb socket to the left and remove.
4. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Lamps in luggage compartment lid/ tailgate

License plate lamp

5-watt bulb, C5W

1. Insert screwdriver into the slot and press to the right, refer to arrows. This releases the lamp.



2. Remove the lamp and replace the bulb.

Sports Wagon: Backup lamp

In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Changing wheels

Safety precautions in the event of a flat tire or wheel change: park the vehicle as far as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning flashers. Lock the steering wheel in straight-ahead setting of the wheels. Apply the handbrake and engage first gear, reverse gear or selector lever position P.
Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
If a warning triangle* or portable hazard warning lamp * is required, set it up on the roadside at an appropriate distance from the rear of the vehicle. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.
Change the wheel only on a level, firm surface which is not slippery. The vehicle or the jack could slip to the side if you attempt to raise the vehicle on a soft or slippery surface such as snow, ice, tiles, etc.
Position the jack on a firm support surface.
Do not use a wooden block or similar object as a support base for the jack, as this would prevent it from extending to its full support height and reduce its load-carrying capacity.
To avoid serious or fatal injury: never lie under the vehicle, and never start the engine while it is supported by the jack.◀

What you will need

To avoid rattling noises later on, note the positions of the tools before removing them, then return them to their initial positions after completing work.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

1 Chock*

2 Vehicle jack*

3 Lug wrench*

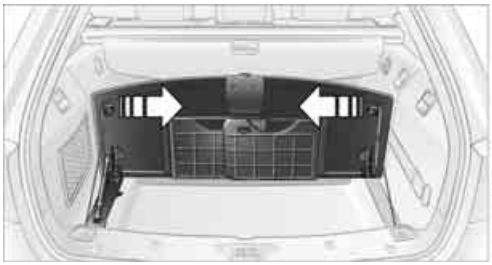
The tools are located in the mount under the floor mat or floor panel flap.

1. Lift up floor mat or floor panel flap and cover located beneath it.
2. Take out the required tools.
3. After using the tools, return them to the storage space.

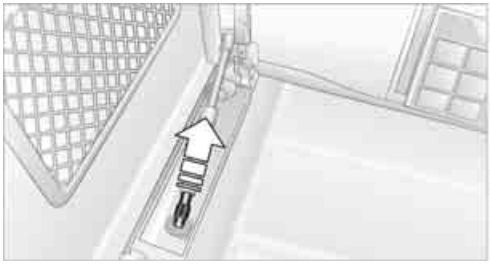
With run-flat tires, no tools are provided for wheel changes. They can be purchased as accessories at your BMW center.◀

Sports Wagon: removing and installing floor panel flap of storage area package

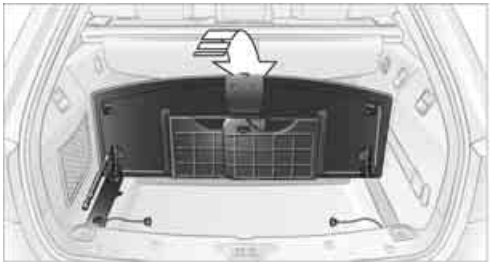
1. Unhook the roll-up cover at the rear.
2. Raise the floor panel flap.
3. Unhook the two catch straps at the top.



4. Unlock the gas spring strut, refer to arrow, and remove.



5. Fold over the floor panel flap toward the front to release it and remove.

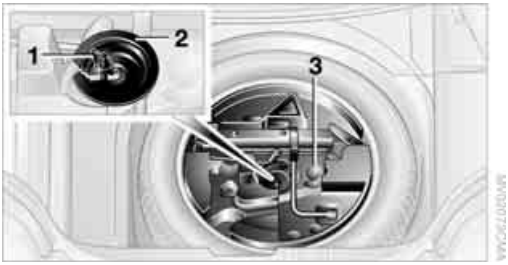


6. Open the front floor panel flap.
7. Swing up the spare tire cover and hook the hooks into the upper frame of the tailgate opening.
8. Take out the cross support upward.

When installing the floor panel flap, proceed in the reverse order and press down the hinge covers.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Compact wheel*



1. Unscrew the wing nut **1**.
2. Remove the washer **2** laterally.
3. Take out the tool mounts **3**.
4. Remove the compact wheel.

Preparing wheel change

1. Observe the safety precautions above.
2. Prevent the vehicle from rolling:
   Place the chock behind the front wheel on the other side of the vehicle, or on inclines, in front of this wheel. On a steep grade, take other steps to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
3. Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking up vehicle

1. Position the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel so that the entire surface of the jack base rests on the ground perpendicularly beneath the jacking point.

   The vehicle jack is designed for changing wheels only. Do not attempt to raise another vehicle model with it or to raise any load of any kind. To do so could cause accidents and personal injury.◀
2. Guide the jack head into the rectangular recess of the jacking point when cranking up, refer to illustration detail.

3. Jack the vehicle up until the wheel you are changing is raised from the ground.

Mounting a wheel

1. Unscrew the lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Remove accumulations of mud or dirt from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub. Also clean the lug bolts.
3. Position the new wheel or compact wheel. Secure the wheel by screwing at least two lug bolts into opposite bolt holes.
   When you mount wheels other than Genuine BMW light-alloy wheels, different lug bolts may also be required.
4. Screw in the remaining lug bolts. Tighten all the bolts securely in a diagonal pattern.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack from beneath the vehicle.

After mounting

1. Tighten the lug bolts in a diagonal pattern.

   To ensure safety, always have the lug bolts checked with a calibrated torque wrench as soon as possible to ensure that they are tightened to the specified torque. The tightening torque is 88.5 lb ft/120 Nm.◀
2. When stowing the wheel and tools in the vehicle, execute these steps in the reverse order.
3. Check and correct the tire inflation pressure at the earliest opportunity.

   Protect valve stems with valve stem seal caps against dirt and contamina-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

tion. Dirt in valve stems is a frequent source of gradual air loss.◀

4. Initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 91, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 93.
5. Replace the damaged tire as soon as possible and have the new wheel/tire balanced.

Driving with compact wheel

Drive reservedly and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

The driving characteristics change, for example reduced track stability on braking, extended braking distance, and altered self-steering characteristics in the limit range. In conjunction with winter tires, these characteristics are more pronounced.

⚠ Only one compact wheel may be mounted. You should re-equip with wheels and tires of the original size as quickly as possible.◀

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate. Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Charging battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine switched off. Connections, refer to Jump starting on page 232.

Disposal

♻ Have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or hand them in to a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always restrain the battery to prevent it from tipping over during transport.◀

Power failure

After a temporary power loss, the functioning of some equipment may be limited and require reinitialization. Individual settings are also lost and must be updated:

- ▷ Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory
  The positions must be stored again, refer to page 47.
- ▷ Time and Date
  The values must be updated, refer to page 83.
- ▷ Radio
  Stations must be stored again if necessary, refer to page 166.
- ▷ Navigation system
  Wait until the system starts, refer to page 134.

Fuses

⚠ Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating, as this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◀

Sedan

Spare fuses, plastic tweezers and fuse allocation diagram are located in the compartment for the onboard tool kit, refer to page 222.

Sports Wagon

Spare fuses and a pair of plastic tweezers are contained in the onboard tool kit, refer to page 222. A fuse allocation diagram is located in the cargo bay behind the right-hand side panel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

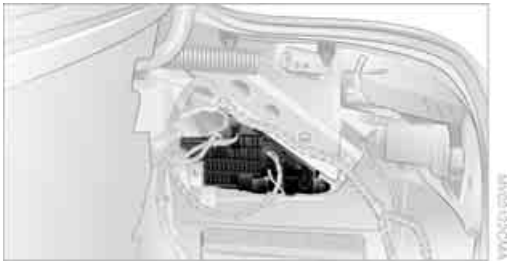
In glove compartment

1. Release both quick-release fasteners.

2. Fold the cover forward or remove.

Sedan: in cargo bay

1. Lift up floor mat.
2. Release the quick-release fastener of the right side panel and pull out the panel.



Sports Wagon: in cargo bay

1. Unhook the retaining strap*, refer to page 121.
2. Open the right-hand side panel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency call

Conditions for an emergency call:

- ▷ Full preparation package mobile phone. With this equipment, an emergency call is still possible when no mobile phone is logged on in the vehicle.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated. Activating BMW Assist, refer to page 201.
- ▷ Radio readiness is activated.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network.
- ▷ The emergency call system is operable.

Once your service contract for BMW Assist expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without you having to visit a workshop. Once the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, emergency calls are not possible. The BMW Assist system be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Initiating an emergency call

1. Briefly press protective cover to open. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the button for at least 2 seconds.

The LED in the button lights up. As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

Once the BMW Assist Response Center has received your emergency call, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.

If conditions allow, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

If the current position of your vehicle can be determined, it will be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard over the hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. You may still be heard by the BMW Assist Response Center, however.

Under certain conditions, an emergency call is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. The automatic emergency call is not affected by the button being pressed.

⚠ For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.◀

▷ You can also use other services of BMW Assist with this button, refer to page 196.◀

Warning triangle*

The warning triangle is located in the luggage compartment lid/tailgate.

Sedan

Loosen the wing nut to open.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Sports Wagon

Release the two quick-release fasteners and fold down the trim piece.

First-aid kit*

Some of the articles contained in the first-aid kit have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace the contents concerned in good time if necessary.

Sedan

The first-aid kit is located in the luggage compartment lid.

Loosen the wing nut to open.

Sports Wagon

The first-aid kit is located in the right side panel of the cargo bay. Before opening the side panel, pull the retaining strap* toward the rear by its rear end and unhook it.

Roadside Assistance*

The Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group offers you assistance in the event of a breakdown around the clock, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of the Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the Contact brochure.

With BMW Assist you can contact the Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group for assistance in the event of a breakdown directly via iDrive, refer to page 197.

Jump starting

When your battery is discharged, you can use two jumper cables to start your BMW with power from the battery in a second vehicle. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Use only jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 Volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical systems and components in both vehicles.

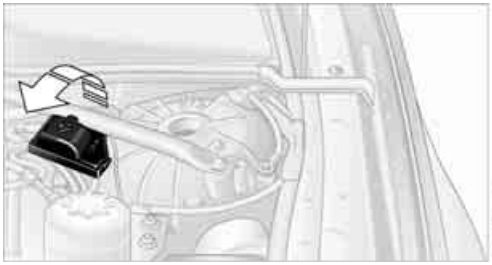
There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles, otherwise there is a danger of shorting.◀

Connecting jumper cables

To avoid personal injury from sparks, follow this sequence when connecting jumper cables.◀

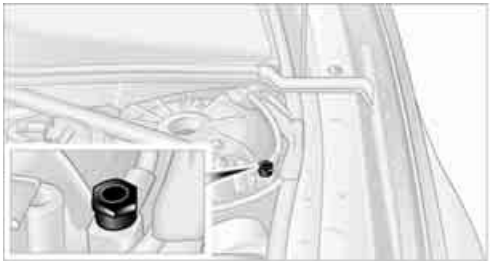
In your BMW, the so-called jump-starting terminal in the engine compartment serves as a positive terminal for the battery, also refer to engine compartment overview on page 217. The cover cap is marked with a +.

1. Fold open the cover of the BMW jump-starting terminal. To do so, pull the tab.



2. Attach one end of the jumper cable plus/+ to the positive terminal of the battery or a jump-starting terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery or to a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one end of the jumper cable minus/– to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.

   Your BMW has a special nut as body ground or negative terminal.



5. Attach the second end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting engine

1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and allow it to run at idle for several minutes at slightly increased speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the connection sequence.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting and towing

Observe applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing.◀

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

Using tow fitting

The screw-in tow fitting must always be carried in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Sedan:
It is located in the toolkit in the luggage compartment lid, refer to page 222.

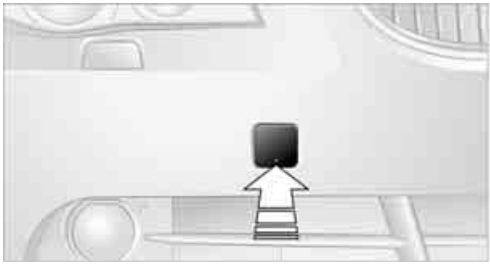
Sports Wagon:
It is located in the toolkit behind the left side panel in the cargo bay, refer to page 222.

Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in. Use the tow fitting for towing only on roads. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.◀

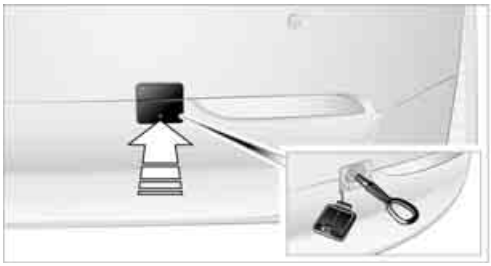
Access to screw thread

Press the arrow symbol on the cover in the bumper.

Front



Rear



Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 59, otherwise the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals and windshield wipers would not be available. If the vehicle electrical system fails, do not tow-start or tow the vehicle. The electric steering-wheel lock cannot be unlocked and the vehicle cannot be steered. For information on jump starting, refer to page 232. There is no power assistance with the engine stopped. This then requires increased effort for braking and steering. Active steering is deactivated and larger steering wheel movements are required.◀

Switch on the hazard warning flashers depending on the local regulations. If the electrical system fails, mark the vehicle to be towed, e.g. with a sign or warning triangle in the rear window.

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Automatic transmission

Selector lever in position N.

Changing selector lever position, refer to Deactivating selector lever interlock page 65.

Do not exceed a towing speed of 45 mph/70 km/h and a towing distance of 90 miles/150 km, otherwise the automatic transmission may be damaged.◀

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission

Engage selector lever position N with the ignition switched on.

Towing methods

Do not lift vehicle by tow fitting or body and chassis parts, otherwise damage may result.◀

In some countries, towing with tow bars or ropes in public traffic is not permitted. Familiarize yourself with the regulations on towing in the respective country.

With tow bar

The towing vehicle may not be lighter than the vehicle to be towed, otherwise it will not be possible to reliably control vehicle response.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

▷ When mounted at an angle, the tow bar will exert lateral forces, tending to push the vehicle sideways.

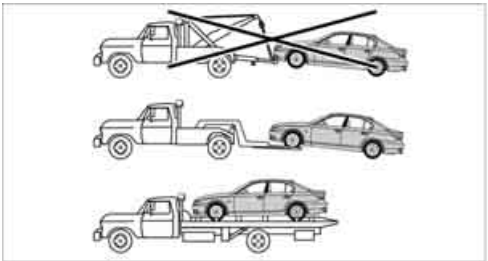
⚠ Only attach the tow bar to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

With tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

⚠ To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Only attach tow ropes to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

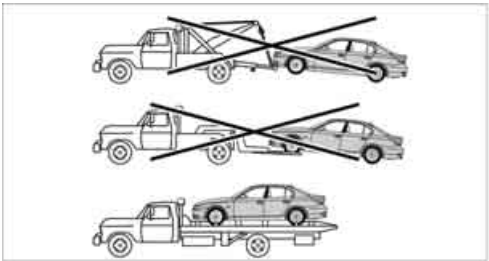
With tow truck



Have the BMW transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

With tow truck for 525xi, 530xi

⚠ Do not tow a BMW with xDrive with just the front or rear axle raised, otherwise the wheels could lock up and the transfer case could be damaged.◀



The BMW may only be transported on a flat bed.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle if possible, but instead start the engine by means of jump starting, refer to page 232. With a catalytic converter, tow-starting should only be carried out with the engine cold, and with automatic transmissions, the engine cannot be started by tow-starting.

⚠ If the electrical system fails, do not tow-start or tow the vehicle, otherwise the electric steering-wheel lock cannot be unlocked and the vehicle cannot be steered.◀

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 59.
3. Shift into 3rd gear. For information on SMG, see below.
4. Tow-start with the clutch completely depressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch again completely.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

SMG Sequential Manual Transmission

1. Tow-start in selector lever position N.
2. Select the Sequential mode. The correct gear will be selected and engaged automatically.

▷ Do not activate the HDC Hill Descent Control of the 525xi, 530 xi during tow-starting, refer to page 89.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Reference

This chapter contains the technical data, the short commands of the voice command system, and the index that will direct you as quickly as possible to the information you are looking for.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

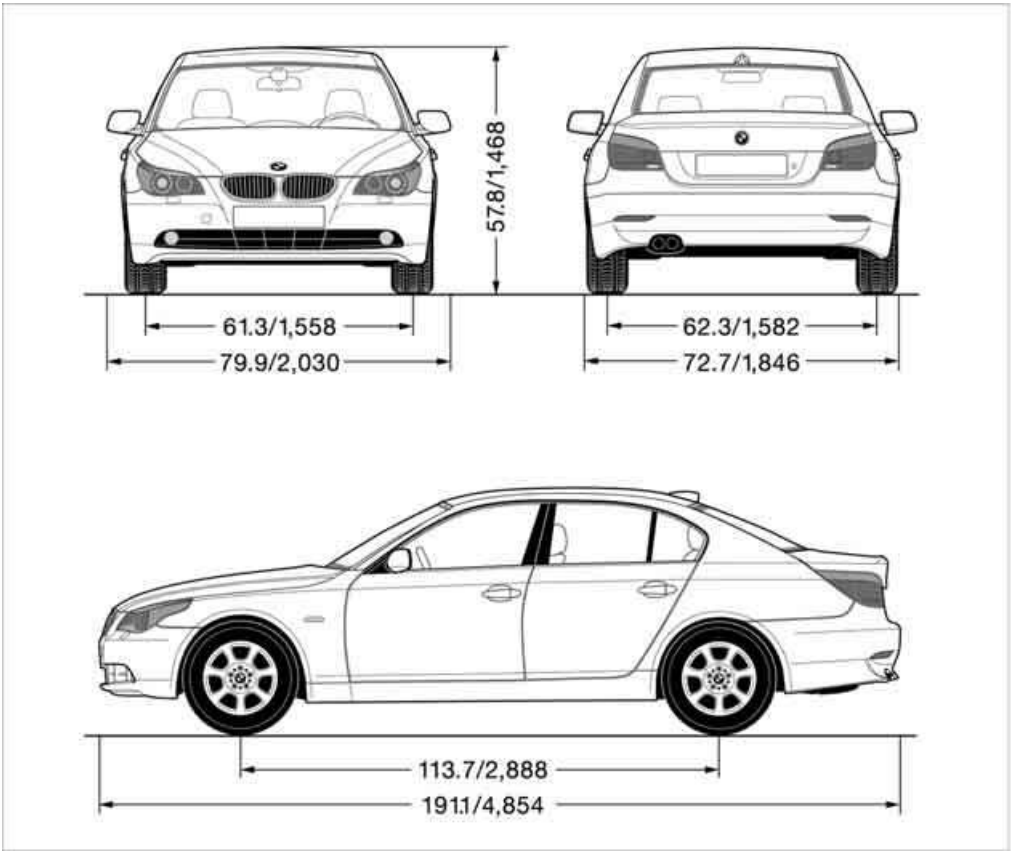
Technical data

Engine data

		525i/xi	530i/xi	550i
Displacement	cu in/cm³	182.8/2,996	182.8/2,996	292.8/4,799
No. of cylinders		6	6	8
Maximum output	hp	215	255	360
at engine speed	rpm	6,250	6,600	6,300
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	185/251	220/298	360/488
at engine speed	rpm	2,750	2,750	3,400

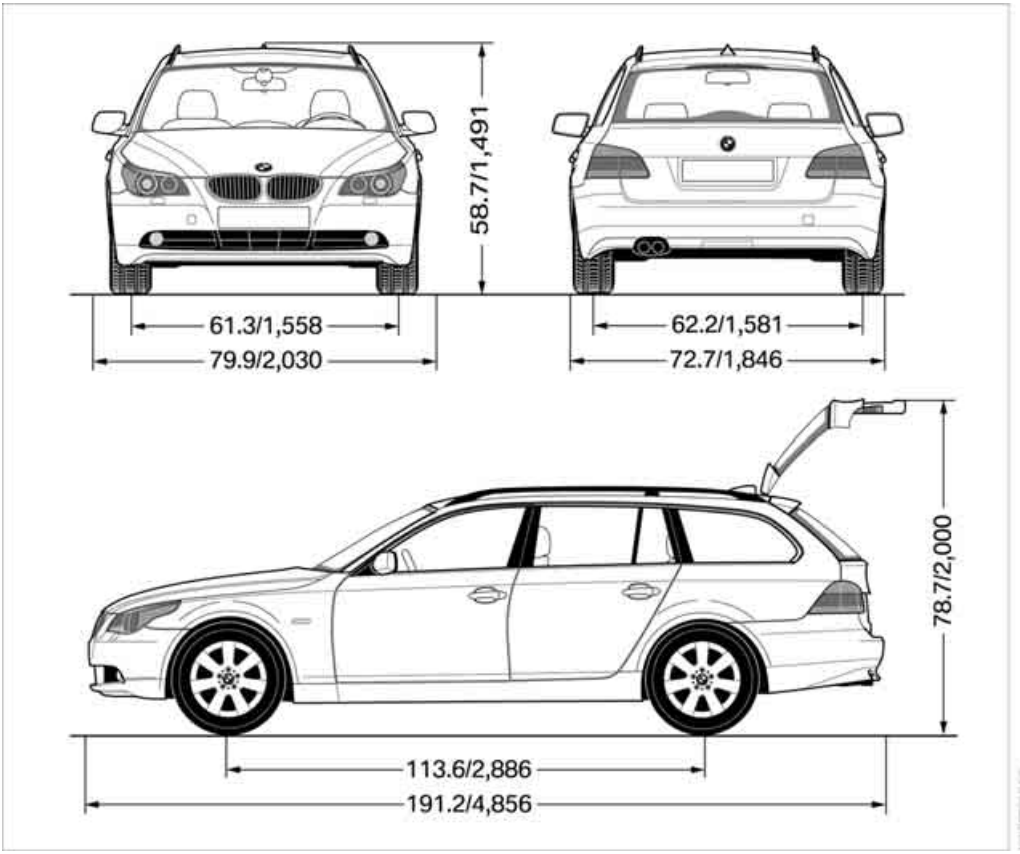
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Dimensions



All dimensions are given in inches/mm.
Vehicle height with xDrive: 58.3 in/1,482 mm
Smallest turning circle diam.: 37.5 ft/11.4 m, with xDrive 39 ft/11.9 m

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG



All dimensions given in inches/mm. Smallest turning circle diam.: 39 ft/11.9 m

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Weights

Sedan		525i	530i	550i
Curb weight				
▷ Manual transmission, SMG	lbs./kg	3,395/1,540	3,450/1,565	3,902/1,770
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	3,439/1,560	3,472/1,575	3,924/1,780
Approved gross vehicle weight				
▷ Manual transmission, SMG	lbs./kg	4,497/2,040	4,552/2,065	5,004/2,270
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	4,541/2,060	4,575/2,075	5,026/2,280
Load	lbs./kg	1,102/500	1,102/500	1,102/500
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,161/980	2,227/1,010	2,469/1,120
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,601/1,180	2,601/1,180	2,679/1,215
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100	220/100	220/100
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	18.4/520	18.4/520	18.4/520

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Sedan		525xi	530xi
Curb weight			
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	3,593/1,630	3,670/1,660
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	3,638/1,650	3,704/1,680
Approved gross vehicle weight			
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	4,696/2,130	4,762/2,160
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	4,740/2,150	4,806/2,180
Load	lbs./kg	1,102/500	1,102/500
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,315/1,050	2,315/1,050
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,646/1,200	2,646/1,200
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100	220/100
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	18.4/520	18.4/520

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Sports Wagon		530xi
Curb weight		
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	3,858/1,750
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	3,891/1,765
Approved gross vehicle weight		
▷ Manual transmission	lbs./kg	5,049/2,290
▷ Automatic transmission	lbs./kg	5,082/2,305
Load	lbs./kg	1,190/540
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,381/1,080
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,866/1,300
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	17.7-58.3/500-1,650

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	gal/liters	approx. 18.5/70	Fuel grade: page 207
of that reserve	gal/liters	approx. 2.1/8	
550i	gal/liters	approx. 2.6/10	
Window cleaning system			For more details: page 67
▷ Sedan	US quarts/liters	approx. 3.2/3	
▷ with headlamp cleaning system	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5	
▷ Sports Wagon	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5	

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Short commands of voice command system*

With short commands you can carry out certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected. Here are the important short commands for the voice command system.

Assistance window

Function	Command
To open the assistance window 20	›Assistance window‹
To select the display in the assistance window 20	›Assistance window map facing north‹, ›Assistance window map direction of travel‹, ›Assistance window arrow display‹, ›Assistance window perspective‹, ›Assistance window current position‹, ›Assistance window trip computer‹ or ›Assistance window onboard info‹
To change scale in assistance window 134	›Assistance window scale ... feet‹ or ›Assistance window scale ... miles‹

Communication

Function	Command
To open phone 183	›Phone‹
To dial phone number 187	›Dial number‹
To display phone book 188	›A to Z‹
To select from the phone book 188	›Call ...‹ or ›Dial name‹
To display "Top 8" 189	›Top 8‹
To redial 188	›Redial‹
To display "Received calls" 189	›Received calls‹
To display "Missed calls" 189	›Missed calls‹
To display "Bluetooth" 185	›Bluetooth‹
To open BMW Assist 197	›BMW Assist‹
To open BMW Service, Services 196	›BMW Service‹
To open "BMW Contact" 190	›BMW Contact‹
To open "BMW Contact Numbers" 190	›BMW Contact numbers‹
To open "Roadside Assistance" 197	›Roadside Assistance‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Navigation

Function	Command
To open navigation system 134	›Navigation‹
To open "Enter address"	›Enter address‹
To open "New destination"	›New destination‹
To display "Input map"	›Input map‹
To display destination list	›Destination list‹
To display address book	›Address book‹
To display route criteria	›Route preference‹
To start destination guidance	›Start guidance‹
To end destination guidance	›Stop guidance‹
To display arrow display	›Arrow display‹
To display map display	›Map‹, ›Map facing north‹, ›Map direction of travel‹ or ›Perspective‹
To change scale	›Scale ... miles‹ or ›Scale ... feet‹
To display roads or towns/cities along route	›Route list‹
To switch on voice instructions	›Navigation info on‹
To switch off voice instructions	›Navigation info off‹
To repeat voice instructions	›Repeat navigation info‹
To open route	›Route menu‹
To open "New route"	›New route‹
To display current position	›Current position‹

Onboard info

Function	Command
To open "Car Data" 77	›Car data‹
To display computer 77	›Onboard info‹
To display trip computer 77	›Trip computer‹
To open stopwatch 82	›Stopwatch‹
To open speed limit 82	›Limit‹
To activate speed limit 82	›Limit on‹
To deactivate speed limit 82	›Limit off‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Entertainment

Function	Command
Tone control 161	›Audio‹
To switch on radio 164	›Radio on‹, ›FM‹ or ›AM‹
To open "FM" 164	›FM menu‹
To open "AM" 164	›AM menu‹
To open "All stations" 164	›FM All stations‹
To select radio station 164	›Station ...‹, e.g. ›Station WNYC‹, or ›Choose station‹
To open "Presets" 164	›FM presets‹ or ›AM presets‹
To select preset radio station 164	›Preset ...‹, e.g. ›Preset 1‹
To open "Manual" 165	›FM manual‹, ›AM manual‹ or ›Choose frequency‹, ›Frequency ... Megahertz‹
To open strongest radio stations 165	›AM Autostore‹
To open "WB" 168	›Weatherband menu‹
To switch on weatherband 168	›Weatherband on‹
To select a weatherband station 168	›Choose weatherband station‹
To open "SAT" 170	›SAT radio menu‹
To switch on satellite radio 170	›SAT radio‹
To open "Presets" of satellite radio 171	›SAT radio presets‹
To open "All channels" of satellite radio 170	›SAT radio all channels‹
To open "Categories" of satellite radio 170	›SAT radio categories‹
To open CD player 173	›CD menu‹
To switch on CD player 173	›CD‹
To open CD changer 173	›CD changer menu‹
To switch on CD changer 173	›CD changer‹
To select a CD in the CD changer 173	›CD 1...6‹
To select music track 174	›CD track ...‹
To select a CD and music track in the CD changer 174	›CD 1...6 track ...‹
To switch on audio playback with external audio device 179	›Audio Aux‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Climate

Function	Command
To adjust temperature distribution for front seat heating 51	›Seat heater distribution‹
To open "Vent settings" 109	›Vent settings‹
To open "Automatic programs" 108	›Automatic programs‹
To open "Parked car ventilation" 111	›Parked car operation‹
To open "Automatic ventilation" 111	›Automatic ventilation‹
To display activation times 111	›Activation time‹

i menu

Function	Command
To open the i menu	›Settings menu‹
"Display off" 21	›Display off‹
To open "Info sources"	›Info sources‹
To open "Settings"	›Settings‹
To open "Door locks" 30, 33	›Door locks‹
To open "Steering wheel buttons" 53	›Steering wheel buttons‹
To open "Lighting" 66	›Lighting‹
To open "Service requirements" 78, 198	›Service requirements‹
To open "Service" 78, 198	›Service‹
To open "BMW Services" settings 200	›BMW service settings‹
To display "Check Control messages" 81	›Check Control messages‹
To open "Head-Up Display" 98	›Head-up display‹
To set brightness of Control Display 84	›Brightness‹
To open "Units" 85	›Units‹
To open "Languages" 85, 134	›Language‹
To open "Time" 83	›Time‹
To open "Date" 84	›Date‹
To open "PDC" 86	›PDC‹
To open "FTM" 91	›FTM‹
To open "TPM" 93	›TPM‹
To display "Bluetooth" 185	›Bluetooth‹
To open "HDC" 89	›HDC‹
Activating BMW Night Vision 101	›Night Vision on‹
Deactivating BMW Night Vision 101	›Night Vision off‹
Displaying settings for BMW Night Vision 101	›Night Vision settings‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Everything from A to Z

Index

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions, and indicates where to find them in the text.

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 87
– indicator/warning lamp 90
ACC, refer to Active cruise control 69
Acceleration assistant for SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 64
Accepted calls 188
Accessories 6
Accident, refer to Emergency call 231
Acoustic signal, refer to Check Control 80
Activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 111
"Activation time" for parked car ventilation 111
Active cruise control 69
– indicator lamp 72
– radar sensor 72
– selecting distance 71
– warning lamps 72
Active head restraints, front 49
Active seat 51
Active seat ventilation 51
Active steering 95
– warning lamp 96
Adapter for spare key 28
Adaptive brake lamps, refer to Brake force display 96
Adaptive Head Light 104
"Add digits" for mobile phone 189
Additives
– coolant 219
– engine oil, refer to Approved engine oils 218
"Address book" for navigation 142
Address for navigation
– deleting 144
– entering 135, 138
– selecting 143
– storing 142
– storing current position 143
"Add to address book" 142
"Add to destination list" 138, 140
Adjusting active backrest width 47
Adjusting interior temperature 108
Adjusting the tone during audio operation, refer to Tone control 161
Adjusting thigh support 46
Adjustment in audio mode
– front/rear balance 162
– right/left balance 162
"After door opened" 48
"After unlocking" 48
Airbags 96
– indicator/warning lamp 98
– indicator lamp for front passenger airbags 97
– sitting safely 45
Air distribution
– automatic 108
– manual 109
Airing, refer to Ventilation 110
Air recirculation
– AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 110
– recirculated-air mode 110
Air recirculation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 110
"Air recirculation on / off" 54
Air supply, automatic climate control 107
Air volume 109
AKI, refer to Fuel quality 207
Alarm system 37
– avoiding unintentional alarms 38
– interior motion sensor 38
– switching off alarm 38
– switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor 38
– tilt alarm sensor 38
"All channels" 170
"All doors" 30
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 214
"All stations" calling up with radio 164, 167
All-wheel drive, refer to xDrive 89
Alterations, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Altering stretch of road 151
Alternate route, refer to Bypassing traffic congestion 154
"AM", reception range 161, 164
Antenna, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Antenna for mobile phone 182
Antifreeze
– coolant 219
– washer fluid 67
Antilock Brake System ABS 87
– indicator/warning lamp 90
Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 37

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Anti-theft system, refer to Central locking system 30
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 241
Approved engine oils 218
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 241
Armrest, refer to Center armrest, rear 118
Around the center console 14
Around the steering wheel 10
Arrival time
– refer to Computer 77
– refer to Starting destination guidance 147
"Arrow display" for navigation 148
Artificial leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Ashtray
– front 117
– rear 117
Assist, refer to BMW Assist 196
Assistance systems, refer to Driving stability control systems 87
Assistance window 20
"Assist. window off" 21
AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 110
"Audio" 161, 163, 168
Audio 160
– controls 160
– switching on/off 160
– tone control 161
– volume 161
Audio device, external 116
Automatic
– air distribution 108
– air volume 108
– garage door opener 113
– headlamp control 103
– service notification 198
– steering wheel adjustment 47
– storing stations 165
– tailgate operation 36
Automatic car washes 128
– also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Automatic climate control 107
– automatic air distribution 108
– parked car ventilation 111
– switching on and off 110
– ventilation in rear 111
Automatic closing of doors, refer to Automatic soft closing 33
Automatic curb monitor 52
Automatic lighting
– refer to Automatic headlamp control 103
– refer to Daytime running lamps 104
– refer to Interior lamps 105
– refer to Pathway lighting 103
"Automatic programs" 108
Automatic roll-up cover, Sports Wagon 119
Automatic soft closing 33
Automatic speed reduction for descents, refer to HDC Hill Descent Control 89
Automatic station search 165
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 64
– deactivating selector lever interlock 65
– interlock 64
– kick-down 65
– selector lever interlock 64
– shiftlock 64
– sport program 65
– tow-starting 234, 235
– with comfort access 40
"Automatic ventilation" 111
AUTO program for automatic climate control 108
"Autostore" on the radio 164, 166
"AUX" 161
AUX-In
– connection 116
– refer to External audio device 179
"AUX" with external audio device 179
Average fuel consumption 77
– setting units 85
Average speed, refer to Computer 76
"Avoid ferries" for navigation 145
"Avoid highways" for navigation 145
Avoiding freeways for navigation 145
Avoiding unintentional alarms 38
"Avoid tollroads" for navigation 145
Axle loads, refer to Weights 241
"A - Z" 188, 189

B

Backrest contour, refer to Lumbar support 47
Backrests, refer to Seats 46
Backrest width adjustment 46
Back seats, refer to Rear seats
Backup lamps, replacing bulbs 225
"Balance", refer to Tone control 162
Band-aids, refer to First-aid kit 232
"Bass", refer to Tone control 162
Bass, refer to Tone control 161, 162
Battery, refer to Vehicle battery 229
– jump starting 232
Battery replacement
– remote control for comfort access 40
BC button, refer to Computer 76
Being towed 234
Belts, refer to Safety belts 50

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Beverage holder, refer to Cup holders 116
Blower, refer to Air volume 109
"Bluetooth" 183
"BMW Assist" 197
BMW Assist 196
– activating 201
– breakdown assistance 197
– contacting BMW Hotline 199
– displaying vehicle data 202
– information service 199
– services offered 196
– TeleService 198
– updating 200
"BMW Contact" 190
"BMW Contact Numbers" 190
BMW homepage 4
BMW maintenance system 220
BMW Night Vision 100
– activating 101
– cleaning camera 102
– cleaning camera, refer to Wiper system 67
– deactivating 101
– making settings 101
"BMW Services" 200
BMW website 4
Bottle holder, refer to Cup holders 116
Bracket for telephone or mobile phone
– refer to Snap-in adapter 194
Brake Assistant, refer to DBC Dynamic Brake Control 87
Brake force display 96
Brake lamps
– replacing bulbs 225
– two-stage 96
Brake rotors
– breaking-in 126
– refer to Braking safely 127
Brakes
– ABS Antilock Brake System 87
– brake force display 96
– breaking-in 126
– CBC Cornering Brake Control 87
– electronic brake-force distribution 87
– handbrake 61
– refer to Braking safely 127
– warning lamps 13
Brake system 126
– brake pads 126
– breaking-in 126
– disk brakes 128
– warning lamp 90
Braking
– DBC Dynamic Brake Control 87
Braking safely 127
Breakdown assistance 197
Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance 232
Breaking-in brake pads 126
Breaking-in the clutch 126
Breaking-in the differential, refer to Engine and differential 126
Break-in period 126
"Brightness" 85, 99
Brightness of Control Display 84
"Brightness" with BMW Night Vision 102
Button for starting engine, refer to Start/Stop button 59
Buttons on steering wheel 11

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 6
"Call" 189, 200
Call
– accepting 187
– displaying accepted 189
– ending 188
– in absence 189
– rejecting 187
– starting 187
Calling
– by entering phone number 187
– from phone book 188
– from Top 8 list 189
– redialing 189
– refer to telephone operating instructions
Can holder, refer to Cup holders 116
Capacities 242
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 229
Car care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Car-care products, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
"Car data" 77
Care 221
– refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cargo
– refer to Cargo loading 128
– securing 130
– securing with ski bag 123

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Cargo bay
– capacity 241
– emergency operation, refer to Opening manually, Sports Wagon 36
– emergency release 35
– expanding, Sports Wagon 120
– floor panel flap, refer to Compartment in floor, Sports Wagon 121
– locking separately 34
– opening/closing, refer to Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate 34
– opening from inside 34
– opening from inside, Sports Wagon 35
– opening from outside 34
– opening from outside, Sports Wagon 35
– opening with remote control 31
Cargo bay cover, refer to Roll-up cover 119
Caring for artificial leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for light-alloy wheels, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for plastic, refer to the Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for the carpet, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for the vehicle finish, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Car key, refer to Keys/remote control 28
Car phone 182
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 115
– refer to Mobile phone 182
– refer to separate operating instructions
Car radio, refer to Radio 164
Car wash 128
– also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– with comfort access 40
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 126
"Categories" 170
CBC Cornering Brake Control 87
CBS Condition Based Service 220
"CD" 161, 173
CD changer 173
– controls 160
– fast forward/reverse 177
– installation location 177
– random order 176
– repeating a track 176
– sampling tracks 175
– selecting a CD 173
– selecting a track 174
– switching on/off 160
– tone control 161
– volume 161
CD player 173
– controls 160
– fast forward/reverse 177
– random order 176
– repeating a track 176
– sampling a track 175
– selecting a track 174
– switching on/off 160
– tone control 161
– volume 161
Center armrest
– front 115
– rear 118
Center brake lamp 225
Center console 14
"Central locking" 30
Central locking
– from inside 33
– from outside 30
Central locking system 30
– comfort access 38
Change "Route preference" 145
Changes, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Changes, technical, refer to Parts and accessories 6
Changing language on Control Display 85
Changing scale for navigation 149
Changing units of measure on Control Display 85
Changing wheels 214, 226
CHECK button 80
Check Control 80
"Check Control messages" 81
Check Gas Cap 207
Checking the air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 208
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 57
Child restraints 55
Child restraint systems 55
Child-safety lock 58
Child seats, refer to Transporting children safely 55
Chime, refer to Check Control 80
Chock 226
Chrome parts, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cigarette lighter 117
Cigarette lighter socket, refer to Connecting electrical devices 117
Cleaning, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
"Climate" 51, 108

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Clock 75
– 12h/24h mode 84
– hour signal 84
– setting time and date 83
Closing
– from inside 33
– from outside 30
Closing fuel filler cap 207
Clothes hooks 116
Cockpit 10
Cold start, refer to Starting engine 60
"Comfort", active backrest width adjustment 47
Comfort access 38
– observe in car wash 40
– replacing battery, remote control 40
Comfort area, refer to Around the center console 14
Comfort operation
– glass sunroof 31
– windows 31
– windows with comfort access 39
– with comfort access 39
Comfort seat 46
"Communication" 187, 197
Compact Disc
– refer to CD changer 173
– refer to CD player 173
Compact wheel
– inflation pressure 209
– wheel change 228
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 59
Compartments
– in cargo bay, Sports Wagon 121
– refer to Storage area package, Sports Wagon 122
– refer to Storage compartments 116
Compressed audio files 173
Computer 76
– displays on Control Display 77
– hour signal 84
"Concert hall", refer to Tone control 163
"Concierge" 199
Condensation, refer to When vehicle is parked 128
Condition Based Service CBS 220
"Confirmation" 31
Confirmation signals for locking and unlocking 31
Connecting car vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical devices 117
Consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption 77
Consumption indicator
– Energy Control 76
Consumption statistics, refer to Average fuel consumption 77
"Continue guidance to destination?" 148
"Contrast" with BMW Night Vision 102
Control Center, refer to iDrive 16
Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– setting brightness 84
– switching off/on 21
Controller, refer to iDrive 16
Controls, refer to Cockpit 10
Coolant 219
– checking level 219
– temperature 75
Cooling, maximum 109
Cooling fluid, refer to Coolant 219
Cooling function, automatic climate control 109
Cooling system, refer to Coolant 219
Copyright 2
Cornering Brake Control CBC 87
Country of destination for navigation 136
Courtesy lamps 105
Cover, roll-up cover, Sports Wagon 119
Cradle for telephone or mobile phone 115
Cruise control 68, 69
– active cruise control 69
Cruising range 76
Cup holders 116
Curb weight, refer to Weights 241
Current consumption, refer to Energy Control 76
"Current position" 154
Current position
– displaying 154
– entering 143
– storing 143
"Curve mode" with BMW Night Vision 102
"Customer Relations" 190, 199
Cylinders, refer to Engine data 238

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10
Data, technical 238
– dimensions 239
– engine 238
– weights 241
"Date" 84
Date 75
– display format 84
– retrieval 75
– setting 84
"Date format" 84
"Daytime running lamps" 104
Daytime running lamps 104
DBC Dynamic Brake Control 87
– warning lamp 90
"Deactivated" 48
Deactivating selector lever interlock 65

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Decommissioning the vehicle
– refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Decommissioning the vehicle, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Defect
– door lock 32
– fuel filler door 206
– glass sunroof 43
– luggage compartment lid 34
– panorama glass roof 44
– tailgate 36
Defrosting windows 109
Defrosting windows and removing condensation 109
Defrosting windshield, refer to Defrosting windows 109
Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows 109
"Delete address book" for navigation 144
"Delete all numbers" on the mobile phone 190
"Delete data" for navigation 144
"Delete" for mobile phone 190
Destination address
– deleting 144
– entering 135, 138
Destination for navigation
– destination list 141
– entering via voice 138
– entry 135
– selecting from address book 143
– selecting using information 141
– storing 142
Destination guidance 147
– bypassing route sections 151
– canceling voice instructions 54
– changing specified route 145
– displaying route 148
– distance and arrival 147
– interrupting 147
– starting 147
– terminating/continuing 147
– voice instructions 150
– volume of voice instructions 150
Destination list for navigation 141
Destinations recently driven to 141
"Details" in audio mode 175
"Detour" for navigation 154
"Dial" for mobile phone 187
"Dial number" 188
"Diamond button" 54
Diamond button 53
Digital clock 75
Digital radio, refer to High Definition Radio 168
Dimensions 239
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 65
Direction announcements, refer to Voice instructions 150
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 150
Directory, refer to Phone book 188
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 142
Displacement, refer to Engine data 238
"Display" 85
Display, refer to iDrive controls 16
Display elements, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Displaying vehicle data 202
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 105
"Display off" 21
Displays
– on Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– refer to Instrument cluster 12
"Display settings" 84, 99
Displays on the windshield, refer to Head-Up Display 98
Disposal
– battery of remote control with comfort access 40
– coolant 219
– vehicle battery 229
Distance, refer to Computer 77
Distance cruise control, refer to Active cruise control 69
"Distance to dest." 77
Distance to destination, refer to Computer 77
Distance warning, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 86
Divided rear backrest, refer to Through-loading system 119
Door entry lighting 105
Door key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Door lock 32
Door locking, confirmation signals 31
"Door locks" 30
Doors
– manual operation 32
– remote control 30
DOT Quality Grades 212
Draft-free ventilation 110
Drinks holder, refer to Cup holders 116
Drive mode 63
"Driver's door only" 30
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 103
Driving route, refer to Displaying route 148

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Driving stability control systems 87
Driving through water 127
Driving tips, refer to General driving notes 126
Dry air, refer to Cooling function 109
Drying the air, refer to Cooling function 109
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 88
– indicator lamp 13, 88
– malfunction 90
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 88
– activating 88
– indicator lamp 13, 88
DVD for navigation 134
Dynamic Brake Control DBC 87
Dynamic Drive 90
Dynamic Driving Control 63
"Dynamic route" for navigation 145
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 88
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 88

E

Easy entry/exit 53
– backrest width 47
Eject button, refer to Buttons on CD player 160
Electrical malfunction
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 206
– glass sunroof, electric 43
– luggage compartment lid 34
– panorama glass sunroof 44
– tailgate 36
Electric steering wheel adjustment 53
Electronic brake-force distribution 87
Electronic oil level check 217
Emergency call 231
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 206
– luggage compartment lid 34
– selector lever interlock, automatic transmission 65
– tailgate 36
Emergency operation, refer to Moving manually
– glass sunroof 43
– panorama glass roof 44
Emergency release for luggage compartment lid in cargo bay 35
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 232
"Enable services" 202
"End call" 188
Energy-conscious driving, refer to Energy Control 76
Energy Control 76
Engine
– breaking-in 126
– data 238
– overheated, refer to Coolant temperature 75
– speed 238
– starting 60
– starting, with comfort access 38
– starting difficulties 60
– switching off 61
Engine compartment 217
Engine coolant 219
Engine oil
– adding 218
– additives, refer to Approved engine oils 218
– approved engine oil 218
– checking oil level 217
– electronic oil level check 217
– interval between changes, refer to Service requirements 78
– oil change 218
– oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 218
"Engine oil level" 218
Engine output, refer to Engine data 238
Engine overheating, refer to Coolant temperature 75
Engine speed, refer to Engine data 238
Engine starting, refer to Starting engine 60
"Enter address" 136, 142
Entering destination via town/city name 136
Entering intersection, navigation 137
Entering the address 135, 138
Entering town/city for navigation 136
Entering zip code for navigation 137
"Entertainment" 160
Entertainment sound output on/off 161
Entry map for destination 140
Environmentally friendly driving, refer to Energy Control 76
"Equalizer", refer to Tone control 163
Equalizer, refer to Tone control 163
"ESN" 170
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 88
Event Data Recorders 221
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 126
Exterior mirrors 52
– adjusting 52
– automatic dimming feature 53
– automatic heating 52
– folding in and out 52
– tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 52

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

External audio device 116, 179
Eye for tow-starting and towing, refer to Tow fitting 233

F

"Fader", refer to Tone control 162
Fader, refer to Tone control 162
Failure messages, refer to Check Control 80
False alarm
– refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms 38
– refer to Switching off alarm 38
Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 50
– warning lamp 50
Fastest route for navigation 145
"Fast route" for navigation 145
"Favorites" calling up with radio 167
Filter, refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 111
Fine wood, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
First aid, refer to First-aid kit 232
First-aid kit 232
Flashing
– during locking/unlocking, refer to Setting confirmation signals 31
– Triple turn signal activation 66
Flashlight, refer to Rechargeable flashlight 115
Flat tire
– changing wheels 226
– compact wheel 228
– Flat Tire Monitor 91, 92
– run-flat tires 92, 94, 213
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 92
– warning lamp 92, 94
Flat tire, refer to Tire condition 213
Flat Tire Monitor 91
– false alarms 91
– initializing system 91
– show chains 215
– system limits 91
– warning lamp 92
Floor mat, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Floor mats/carpets, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Fluid reservoir, refer to Washer fluid reservoir 67
"FM", reception range 161, 164
FM, waveband 164
Fog lamps 105
– indicator lamp 13, 105
Folding rear backrest 119
Folding rear backrest, Sports Wagon 120
Fold-over rear backrest 119
Footbrake, refer to Braking safely 127
Footwell lamps, refer to Interior lamps 105
Forward, fast
– CD changer 177
– CD player 177
For your own safety 5
4-wheel drive system, refer to xDrive 89
Freeway, refer to Route criteria 145
Front airbags 96
Front armrest, refer to Center armrest, front 115
Front passenger airbags, deactivating 97
Front seat adjustment 46
FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 91
Fuel 207
– average consumption 77
– display 76
– high-quality brands 207
– quality 207
– specifications 207
– tank contents, refer to Capacities 242
Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge 76
Fuel consumption display, computer, average fuel consumption 77
Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 76
Fuel filler door 206
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 206
Fuel-saving driving, refer to Energy Control 76
Full mobile phone preparation package 182
Full screen display, refer to Switching assistance window off 21
"Full screen" with BMW Night Vision 102
Fuses 229

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 113
Gasoline, refer to Required fuel 207
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 76
Gear changes
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 64
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 63

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Gear display
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 64
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 62
Gearshift lever
– manual transmission 62
Gearshift lever, manual transmission 62
Gearshift lever positions, manual transmission 62
General driving notes 126
Glass sunroof, electric 41
– comfort operation from outside 32
– comfort operation with comfort access 39
– moving manually 43
– remote control 31
Glove compartment 114
– lighting 114
– rechargeable flashlight 115
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 134
Grills, refer to Ventilation 110
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 241

H

Halogen lamps 223
Handbrake 61
– indicator lamp 13, 61
Hand lamp, refer to Rechargeable flashlight 115
Hands-free system, refer to Microphone 14
Hazard warning flashers 15
"HDC" 89
HDC Hill Descent Control 89
"HDC on" 89
"HDC on / off" 54
"HD radio" 168
HD radio, refer to High Definition Radio 168
Head airbags 96
Headlamp
– cleaning tank, refer to Capacities 242
Headlamp control, automatic 103
Headlamp flasher 65
Headlamps 103
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 66
– replacing bulbs 223
– reservoir for washer fluid 217
Head Light, refer to Adaptive Head Light 104
Head restraints 48
– front head restraints, active 49
– installing 49
– removing 49
– sitting safely 45
"Head-Up Display" 99
Head-Up Display 98
Heated
– mirrors 52
– rear window 109
– seats 50
– steering wheel 53
Heating 107
– exterior mirrors 52
– interior 107
– rear window 109
– residual heat 110
– seats 50
– steering wheel 53
Heating with engine switched off, refer to Residual heat 110
Heavy cargo, refer to Securing cargo 130
Height, refer to Dimensions 239
Height adjustment
– seats 46
– steering wheel 53
High beams 105
– headlamp flasher 105
– indicator lamp 13
– replacing bulbs 224
High Definition Radio 168
High water, refer to Driving through water 127
Hill Descent Control HDC 89
Hills 127
Holder for cups 116
"Home address" for navigation 144
Homepage of BMW 4
Hood 216
Hooks for shopping bags, Sports Wagon 121
Horn 10
Hotel function, refer to Locking separately 34
Hot exhaust system 126
"Hour memo" 84
"House number" for destination entry 138
Hydraulic brake assistant, refer to DBC Dynamic Brake Control 87
Hydroplaning 127

I

IBOC, refer to High Definition Radio 168
Ice, refer to Outside temperature warning 75
ID3 tag, refer to Information on track 175
Identification mark
– recommended tire brands 214
Identification marks
– run-flat tires 213
– tire coding 211

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

iDrive 16
– assistance window 20
– automatic climate control with expanded scope 108
– changing date and time 83
– changing language 85
– changing menu page 19
– changing settings 83
– changing units of measure and display type 85
– confirming selection or entry 19
– controller 16
– controls 16
– displays, menus 17
– operating principle 17
– selecting menu item 19
– setting brightness 84
– start menu 17
– status information 20
– symbols 18
Ignition 59
– switched off 60
– switched on 59
Ignition key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 59
Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 59
Ignition lock 59
– starting engine with comfort access 40
i menu 17
Imprint 2
Indicator/warning lamps
– ABS Antilock Brake System 90
– active steering 96
– airbags 98
– brake system 90
– DSC 13, 88
– DTC 13, 88
– Flat Tire Monitor 92
– fog lamps 13
– safety belt warning 50
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 94
Indicator and warning lamps 13
Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 208
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 91
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 92
Info menu 17
Information
– on another location 141
– on current position 141
– on destination location 141
"Information" for navigation 141
Information menu, refer to i menu 17
"Information on destination" 142
Information service 199
"Info sources" 78
Initializing
– Flat Tire Monitor 91
– radio, refer to Storing stations 166
– refer to Power failure 229
– refer to Setting time and date 83
– seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 47
"Input map" 140
Installation location
– CD changer 177
– drive for navigation DVD 134
– mobile phone 115
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 150
Instrument cluster 12
Instrument illumination, refer to Instrument lighting 105
Instrument lighting 105
Instrument panel, refer to Cockpit 10
Instrument panel, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Integrated key 28
Integrated universal remote control 113
Interesting destination for navigation 141
"Interim time" 83
Interior lamps 105
– switching on with remote control 31
Interior motion sensor 38
– switching off 38
Interior rearview mirror 52
– automatic dimming feature 53
Interlock on automatic transmission 64
Intermittent mode of the wipers 66

J

Jacking points 228
Joystick, refer to iDrive 16
Jumpering, refer to Jump starting 232
Jump starting 232

K

Keyless-Go, refer to Comfort access 38
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort access 38
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 29
"Keypad" 191
Keys 28
– key-related settings, refer to Personal Profile 29
– spare key 28
Kick-down
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 65
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 63
Knock control 207

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

L

Lamps, refer to Parking lamps/ low beams 103
Lamps and bulbs 223
"Language / Units" 85
"Language / Units" for navigation 150
"Languages" 85
"Languages" for navigation 150
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 130
Last destinations, refer to Destination list 141
"Last seat pos." 48
LATCH child restraint fixing system 57
LEDs light-emitting diodes 223
Length, refer to Dimensions 239
License plate lamp, replacing bulbs 226
Light-emitting diodes LEDs 223
Lighter 117
"Lighting" 66, 104
Lighting
– instruments 105
– lamps and bulbs 223
– of the vehicle, refer to Lamps 103
Light switch 103
"Limit" 82
Loading
– securing cargo 130
– stowing cargo 129
– vehicle 128
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 130
"Lock after driving" 33
Lock buttons in the doors, refer to Locking 33
Locking 31
– confirmation signals 31
– from inside 33
– from outside 31
– without key, refer to Comfort access 38
Locking and unlocking doors
– confirmation signals 31
– from inside 33
– from outside 30
LOGIC 7 162
Low beams 103
– automatic 103
– replacing bulbs 223
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 47
Lug bolts 228
– tightening torque, refer to After mounting 228
– wrench 226
Luggage compartment, refer to Cargo bay
Luggage compartment lid 34
– emergency operation, refer to Manual operation 34
– emergency release 35
– locking separately 34
– opening from inside 34
– opening from outside 34
– unlocking and locking from inside 33
– unlocking manually 34
Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate
– comfort access 39
Luggage net, refer to Separation net 120
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 130
Lumbar support 47
LW, waveband 164

M

M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 214
Maintenance 220
– refer to Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 220
– refer to Service requirements 78
– refer to Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 220
Maintenance system 220
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 80
Manual air distribution 109
Manual mode
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 65
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 63
Manual operation
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 206
– glass sunroof 43
– luggage compartment lid 34
– panorama glass sunroof 44
– selector lever interlock, automatic transmission 65
Manual transmission 62
"Manual" with radio 165
"Map direction of travel" 149
Map display 148
"Map facing north" 149
Map for navigation
– changing scale 149
– destination entry 140
Map view facing north 148
Master key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Maximum cooling 109
Maximum speed
– with compact wheel 229
Maximum speed with winter tires 215

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Measurements, refer to Dimensions 239
Memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 47
MENU, button refer to Start menu 17
Menus, refer to iDrive 16
Message list for traffic information 152
Microfilter 111
Microphone
– for mobile phone 14
– for voice command system 14
Mirror dimming feature 53
Mirrors 52
– automatic curb monitor 52
– folding in and out 52
– heating 52
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 47
"Missed calls" 188
Missed calls 189
Mobile communications devices in vehicle 127
Mobile phone
– accepted calls 189
– adjusting volume 186
– calling 187
– ending call 188
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 115
– missed calls 189
– operation by voice 191
– operation via iDrive 186
– redialing 189
– refer to separate operating instructions
– Top 8 189
– touch tone dialing, refer to Tone dialing method 190
Mobile phone, refer to separate operating instructions
Mobile phone battery 195
Mobile phones, use in the interior, refer to Mobile communications devices 127
Monitor, refer to iDrive 16
Monitoring pressure of tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 91
"Monitor on / off" 54
Most recent mobile phone numbers 189
MP3, refer to Compressed audio files 173
Multi-function steering wheel, refer to Buttons on steering wheel 11
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/ headlamp flasher 65
– refer to Wiper system 66
Music track
– sampling, scan 175
Music track, finding 175
Music tracks
– random play sequence 176
"Mute on / off" 54
"M View" 99
MW, waveband 164

N

"Navigation" 77, 135
Navigation destination
– entering manually 135
– home address 144
– selecting via map 140
Navigation drive, installation location 134
Navigation DVD 134
Navigation instructions, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 150
Navigation system 134
– address book 142
– bypassing route sections 151
– destination entry 135
– destination guidance in assistance window 134
– destination list 141
– displaying current position 154
– displaying route 148
– entering a destination manually 135
– entering destination via voice 138
– last destinations 141
– navigation DVD 134
– opening 135
– route list 149
– searching for a special destination 141
– selecting destination using information 141
– selecting destination via map 140
– selecting route criteria 145
– starting destination guidance 147
– switching off, refer to Terminating/continuing destination guidance 147
– terminating/continuing destination guidance 147
– voice instructions 150
– volume adjustment 150
"Navigation voice instructions" 54, 150
Neck support, refer to Head restraints 48
"New address" for navigation 142
"New data request" for BMW Assist 199
"New destination" 135, 140
New remote control 28
"New route" 151
New wheels and tires 214

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

"Next entertainment source" 54
Night Vision, refer to BMW Night Vision 100
Night vision device, refer to BMW Night Vision 100
"Night Vision off" 101
"Night Vision on / off" 54
"Normal", active backrest width adjustment 47
Nozzles, refer to Windshield washer nozzles 67
Nylon rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 233

O

OBD socket, refer to Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 221
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 207
Odometer 75
Oil, refer to Engine oil 217
Oil change intervals, refer to Service requirements 78
"On a new destination" for navigation 141
Onboard computer, refer to iDrive 16
"Onboard info" 77
Onboard toolkit 222
"On destination" 141
"On location" 141
Opening and closing
– comfort access 38
– from inside 33
– from outside 30
– panorama glass sunroof 43
– using remote control 30
– using the door lock 32
Operating principle, iDrive 17
Operation by voice for mobile phone 191
– adjusting volume 192
– canceling 192
– commands 192
– correcting phone number 193
– dialing phone number 193
– placing a call 193
– redialing 194
– voice phone book 193
"Options" 200
Orientation menu, refer to Start menu 17
Output, refer to Engine data 238
Outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 110
Outside temperature display 75
– changing unit of measure 85
– in computer 85
Overview
– operating principle 17
– radio control 160
– screen display 20

P

Panic mode 31
Panorama glass sunroof 43
– moving manually 44
Park Distance Control PDC 86
"Parked car operation" 111
"Parked car ventilation" 111
Parked car ventilation 111
– activating activation time 112
– preselecting activation times 111
– switching on and off directly 111
Parked car ventilation system
– LED 107
Parking, vehicle 61
Parking aid, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 86
Parking assistant, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 86
Parking brake, refer to Handbrake 61
Parking lamps 103
– replacing bulbs 224
Parts and accessories 6
Passenger airbags, deactivating, refer to Exception for front passenger seat 55
Passenger-side exterior mirror, tilting down 52
"Pathway lighting" 104
Pathway lighting 103
"PDC" 87
"PDC display on" 87
PDC Park Distance Control 86
Personal Profile 29
"Perspective" 149
"Phone" 184, 187
Phone book 186
– changing entry 188
– creating and editing voice phone book 193
– deleting all entries 190
– deleting entry 190
– dialing phone number 188
Phone numbers
– deleting from phone book 190
– dialing 187
– most recent numbers 189
– selecting in phone book 189
– Top 8 189
Pinch protection system
– glass sunroof, electric 42
– panorama glass sunroof 44
– power windows 41
Plasters, refer to First-aid kit 232
Plastic, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
"Play" for radio 171
"Play" in audio mode 174
Plug-in unit for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 59

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Pollen, refer to Microfilter/ activated charcoal filter 111
Position
– displaying 154
– storing 143
Power failure 229
Power windows, refer to Windows 40
Preselecting activation times of the parked car ventilation 111
"Presets" on the radio 164, 170
Pressure, tires 208
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 92
"Profile" 202
Programmable buttons on steering wheel 53
Protective function, refer to Pinch protection system
– glass sunroof, electric 42
– panorama glass sunroof 44
– windows 41

R

Radio
– Autostore 165
– controls 160
– High Definition Radio 168
– sampling stations 165
– satellite radio 169
– selecting frequency manually 165
– selecting waveband 160, 164
– station search 165
– station selection 164
– station with the best reception 165
– storing stations 166
– switching on/off 160
– tone control 161
– volume 161
– Weather Band, refer to Weather news flashes 167
Radio key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 59
Radio readiness 59
– switched off 60
– switched on 59
– with comfort access 40
Rain sensor 66
"Random", random play sequence 176
"Random all" in audio mode 176
"Random directory" in audio mode 176
"RDS" 167
Reading lamps 106
Rear armrest, refer to Center armrest, rear 118
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 225
– replacing bulbs 225
Rear seats
– adjusting head restraints 49
– folding over backrest 119
– heating 51
– removing head restraints 50
Rear socket 118
Rear ventilation 111
Rearview mirror 52
Rear window
– changing wiper blade 222
– heating 109
– opening and closing on Sports Wagon 35
– roller sun blind, refer to Sun blinds 114
– window wiper on Sports Wagon 67, 128
Rear window safety switch 41
"Received calls" 188
Reception
– quality 167
– radio stations 167
– regional station 165
Reception level of mobile phone, refer to Status information 20
Rechargeable flashlight 115
Recirculated-air mode 110
– air recirculation 110
– AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 110
Reclining seat, refer to Seats 46
Recording times, refer to Stopwatch 82
"Redial" for mobile phone 188
Redialing with mobile phone 194
Reflectors, refer to Tail lamps 225
Refueling 206
Releasing, hood 216
Releasing the locks, refer to Unlocking 39
"Relock door if not opened" 33
Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range 76
Remaining distance to destination, refer to Computer 77
Remote control 28
– comfort access 38
– garage door opener 113
– luggage compartment lid 31
– malfunction 32, 40
– replacing battery 40
– tailgate 31
Removing condensation on the windows 109
"Repeat directory" in audio mode 176
"Repeat" in audio mode 176
"Repeat track" in audio mode 176
Replacement fuses 229
Replacement of tires, refer to Changing wheels 226
Replacement remote control, refer to New remote controls 28
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 223
Replacing tires 214

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Replacing wheels/tires, refer to New wheels and tires 214
Reporting safety defects 7
Reserve
– warning, refer to Fuel gauge 76
"Reset" 91, 93
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 163
"Reset" of tone settings 163
"Reset" stopwatch 82
"resetting FTM ..." 92
Residual heat 110
Restraint systems
– for children 55
– refer to Safety belts 50
Retaining straps, refer to Storage area package, Sports Wagon 121
Retreaded tires 214
Reverse, fast
– CD changer 177
– CD player 177
Reverse gear
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 64
– manual transmission 62
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 63
Road map 148
"Roadside Assistance" 190, 197
Roadside Assistance 232
Roadside parking lamps 105
– replacing bulbs 224
Roller sun blind, refer to Sun blinds 114
Roll-up cover, Sports Wagon 119
Roof load capacity 241
Roof-mounted luggage rack 130
Rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 233
Rotary/pushbutton, refer to iDrive 16
Route 145
– bypassing sections 151
– changing 151
– changing criteria 145
– displaying 148
– displaying arrow display 148
– displaying map view 148
– displaying streets or towns/cities 149
– selecting 145
Route information, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 150
Route map, refer to Displaying map view 148
Route selection 145
RSC Runflat System Component, refer to Run-flat tires 213
Rubber parts, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Run-Flat Tires
– Flat Tire Monitor 91
Run-flat tires 213
– continuing driving with a damaged tire 92, 94
– flat tire 92, 94
– new wheels and tires 214
– tire inflation pressure 92, 94, 208
– Tire Pressure Monitor 92
– tire replacement 214
– winter tires 214

S

Safety 5
Safety belts 50
– damage 50
– refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– sitting safely 45
– warning lamp 50
Safety belt tensioners
– refer to Airbags 96
– refer to Safety belts 50
Safety systems
– ABS Antilock Brake System 87
– airbags 96
– driving stability control systems 87
– safety belts 50
Safety tires, refer to Run-flat tires 213
Satellite radio 169
– enabling channel 169
– selecting channel 170
– storing channel 170
"SAT" for radio 161, 169
"Save current destination" 144
"Scan"
– music tracks on CD 175
– stations with radio 165
Scan
– CD changer 175
– CD player 175
– radio 165
"Scan all" in audio mode 175
"Scan directory" in audio mode 175
Screen, refer to iDrive 16
Screw thread for tow fitting 234
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 169
"Seat heater distribution" 51
Seats 46
– active backrest width adjustment 47
– adjusting the seats 46
– comfort seat 46
– easy entry/exit 47
– heating 50
– lumbar support 47
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 47
– shoulder support 46
– sitting safely 45
– storing the setting 47
– thigh support 46
– ventilation, refer to Active seat ventilation 51

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Securing load
– refer to Securing cargo 130
– with ski bag, refer to Securing cargo 123
"Select as destination" 141, 200
"Select current speed" 82
Selecting audio sources, refer to Operation via iDrive 160
Selecting distance for active cruise control 71
Selecting frequency manually 165
Selecting menu items 19
Selecting route 145
Selection options with navigation system 145
Selector lever
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 64
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 62
Selector lever interlock, refer to Shiftlock
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 64
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 63
Selector lever positions
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 64
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 62
Self-leveling suspension 90
Separation net, Sports Wagon 120
Sequential Manual Transmission SMG 62
"Service" 78, 198, 217
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 232
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 220
Service Interval Display
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 220
– refer to Service requirements 78
"Service notification" 198
"Service Request" 190, 198
"Service requirements" 78, 198, 218
Service requirements 78
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 220
"Service Status" 202
"Set date" 84
"Set" in audio mode 161
"Set" on trip computer 78
"Set service date" 79
"Set time" 84
Setting button, refer to Controls, controller 16
"Settings" 202
Settings
– BMW Night Vision 101
– changing on Control Display 83
– clock, 12h/24h mode 84
– configuring, refer to Personal Profile 29
– date 84
– language 85
– units of measure 85
"Settings" for BMW Assist 200
"Settings" for unlocking 30
Settings menu, refer to i menu 17
Setting time, refer to Preselecting activation times 111
Shifting gears
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 65
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 63
Shiftlock
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 64
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 63
Shift paddles on steering wheel 63
Short commands of voice command system 243
"Short route" for navigation 145
Short route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 145
Shoulder support 46
"Show current position" 140
"Show destination position" 141
Shuffled, refer to Random
– CD changer 176
– CD player 176
Side airbags 96
Side marker lamps, replacing bulbs 225
Side-mounted turn signals, replacing bulbs 224
Side window blinds, refer to Sun blinds 114
Signal horn, refer to Horn 10
Sitting safely 45
– with airbags 45
– with head restraint 45
– with safety belts 45
Ski bag 122
Sliding/tilt sunroof
– refer to Glass sunroof, electric 41
– refer to Panorama glass sunroof 43
Slope assistant, refer to Starting assistant 127
SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 62
– acceleration assistant 64
– breaking-in 126
– Dynamic Driving Control 63
– gear display 62
– kick-down 63
– shiftlock 63
– towing 234
– tow-starting 235
Snap-in adapter
– mounting/removing 194
– using 182
Snow chains 215
Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 221

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Socket for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 59
Sockets, refer to Connecting electrical devices 117
Soft closure aid, refer to Automatic soft closing 33
Song search on CD, refer to Sampling tracks 175
SOS, refer to Initiating an emergency call 231
Spare
– adapter for spare key 28
– fuses 229
– key 28
– wheel, refer to Compact wheel 228
Spare wheel, refer to Changing wheels 226
Special oils, refer to Approved engine oils 218
Specified oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 218
Speed
– limit 82
– with compact wheel 229
Speed-dependent volume 162
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 82
Speedometer 12
"Speed volume", refer to Tone control 162
Speed with winter tires 215
"Sport", active backrest width adjustment 47
Sport program, refer to Dynamic Driving Control 63
Sports Wagon
– automatic roll-up cover 119
– automatic tailgate operation 36
– compartments in cargo bay 121
– expanding cargo bay 120
– opening rear window 35
– opening tailgate 35
– panorama glass sunroof 43
– rear window wiper 67
– rear window wiper, changing wiper blade 222
– releasing fuel filler door in event of electrical malfunction 206
– roll-up cover 119
– roll-up cover for cargo bay 119
– self-leveling suspension 90
– separation net 120
– socket in cargo bay 118
– storage area package 121
– tail lamps, replacing bulbs 225
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 87
"Star button" 54
Star button 53
Start/Stop button 59
– starting the engine 60
Start/stop button
– switching off the engine 61
"Start destination guidance" 140
"Start" for stopwatch 82
"Start guidance" 138, 147
Starting, refer to Starting engine 60
Starting assistance, refer to Jump starting 232
Starting assistant 127
Starting difficulties
– jump starting 232
– refer to Special starting conditions 60
Starting off on slopes, refer to Starting assistant 127
Start menu, iDrive 17
"Start service" 197
"State / Province" for destination entry 136
"State inspection" 79
Station, refer to Radio 164
"Status" 79
Status information on Control Display 20
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 5
Steering wheel
– adjustment 53
– automatic adjustment, refer to Steering wheel memory 47
– buttons on steering wheel 11
– easy entry/exit 53
– heating 53
– lock, refer to Ignition lock 59
– locking 59
– memory 47
– programmable buttons 53
– shift paddles 63
"Steering wheel buttons" 54
Steering-wheel shift buttons, refer to Shift paddles 63
Steering with variable ratio, refer to Active steering 95
Steptronic, refer to Automatic transmission with Steptronic 64
– sport program and manual mode 65
"Stop" for stopwatch 83
"Stopwatch" 82
Stopwatch 82
Storage area package, Sports Wagon 121
Storage compartments 116
"Store" for radio 171
"Store in address book" for navigation 143
"Store" with radio 166

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Storing current position 143
Storing radio stations 166
Storing sitting position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 47
Storing tires 215
"Street" for destination entry 137
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 208
Sun blinds 114
"Surround Settings", refer to Tone control 162
SW, waveband 164
Swinging up floor panel, Sports Wagon 121
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching off engine 61
Switching on
– audio 160
– CD changer 160
– CD player 160
– radio 160
Switching on hour signal 84
Swiveling headlamps, refer to Adaptive Head Light 104
Symbols 4
– indicator/warning lamps 13
– navigation system 153
– status information 20
– traffic information with navigation system 151

T

Tachometer 75
"Tailgate" 36
Tailgate 34
– automatic operation 36
– emergency operation, refer to Opening manually 36
– locking and unlocking from inside 33
– opening from inside 35
Tail lamps 225
– replacing bulbs 225
Tank contents, refer to Capacities 242
Target cursor for navigation 140
Technical alterations, refer to For your own safety 5
Technical data 238
– capacities 242
– dimensions 239
Telematics, refer to BMW Assist 196
Telephone
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 115
– refer to Mobile phone 182
"Telephone list" 54
TeleService 198
Temperature
– adjusting in upper body region 108
– adjusting with automatic climate control 108
– changing units of measure 85
– refer to Coolant temperature 75
Temperature display
– changing units of measure 85
– outside temperature 75
– outside temperature warning 75
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 68
"Terminate services" 201
"Text language" 85
"Theater", refer to Tone control 163
The individual vehicle 5
Third brake lamp, refer to Center brake lamp 225
Through-loading system 119
Tightening torque of the lug bolts, refer to After mounting 228
Tilt alarm sensor 38
– switching off 38
Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 52
"Time" 83
"Time / Date" 83
"Time format" 84
Timer, refer to Preselecting activation times 111
"Timer 1" for parked car ventilation 112
"Timer 2" for parked car ventilation 112
Tire inflation pressures 208
Tire pressure loss 92, 93
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 92
Tire Quality Grading 212
Tire replacement, new wheels and tires 214
Tires
– age 212
– air loss 92, 94
– breaking-in 126
– changing 214
– condition 213
– damage 213
– flat tire, refer to Changing wheels 226
– inflation pressure 208
– new wheels and tires 214
– pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 91
– pressure monitoring, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 92
– replacing 226
– retreaded tires 214
– run-flat tires 213
– size 211
– tread 213
– wear indicators 213
– wheel/tire combination 214
– winter tires 214
"Tires, FTM" 91
Tire trouble
– changing wheels 226
– compact wheel 228
"Tone" 161
Tone dialing method 190
Tone in audio mode
– adjusting 161
– middle setting 163

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Tone on locking/unlocking 31
Tools, refer to Onboard toolkit 222
"Top 8" for mobile phone 188
Torque
– lug bolts, refer to After mounting 228
– refer to Engine data 238
Touch tone dialing, refer to Tone dialing method 190
Tow bar 234
Tow fitting 233
Towing 233
– methods 234
– tow fittings 233
– with automatic transmission 234
– with manual transmission 234
– with SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 234
"Town / City" for destination entry 136
Tow rope 235
Tow-starting 233
"TPM" 93
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 92
– resetting system 93
– system limits 93
– warning lamp 94
Track
– sampling on CD 175
– selecting with CD 174
Tracks
– random play sequence 176
Track width, refer to Dimensions 239
Traction-assist feature, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 88
Traction control, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 88
Traffic congestion
– bypassing 154
– displaying traffic information 151
– refer to Bypassing route sections 151
"Traffic Info" 151
Traffic information for navigation
– depiction in route map 153
– displaying 152
– during destination guidance 154
– symbols 153
Traffic information with navigation 151
– selecting stations 152
Transmission
– automatic transmission with Steptronic 64
– deactivating selector lever interlock on automatic transmission with Steptronic 65
– manual transmission 62
– SMG Sequential Manual Transmission 62
– starting assistant 127
– towing 234
Transporting children safely 55
Transport securing device, refer to Securing cargo 130
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tire tread 213
"Treble", refer to Tone control 162
Treble, refer to Tone control 162
"Trip computer" 78
Trip computer 77
Trip-distance counter, refer to Trip odometer 75
"Triple turn signal" 66
Trip odometer 75
Trunk, refer to Cargo bay
Trunk lid, refer to Tailgate 35
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 239
Turn signals 65
– indicator lamp 12
– replacing bulbs 224

U

Underbody protection, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Uniform Tire Quality Grading/ UTQR 212
"Units" 85
Units
– average fuel consumption 85
– temperature 85
Universal garage-door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 113
Universal remote control 113
"Unlock button" 30
Unlocking
– from inside 33
– from outside 30
– without key, refer to Comfort access 38
Unlocking without key, refer to Comfort access 38
"Update services" 200
"Use current location as address" 143, 144
Used batteries
– refer to Disposal 229
– refer to Replacing battery 40
Using turn signals 65

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

V

Valve screw caps, refer to After mounting 228
Vehicle
– battery 229
– breaking-in 126
– care 221
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– loading 128
– measurements, refer to Dimensions 239
– parking 61
– washing, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– weights 241
"Vehicle / Tires" for unlocking 30
Vehicle jack 226
– jacking points 228
Vehicle position, refer to Displaying current position 154
Ventilation 110
– draft-free 110
– in rear 111
– while stationary 111
Venting, refer to Ventilation 110
Vent outlets 107
– refer to Ventilation 110
Vent outlets of automatic climate control 107
Vent outlets of the automatic climate control 107
Vents, refer to Ventilation 110
"Vent settings" 109
Viscosity 219
Voice, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 150
Voice command system
– overview 22
– short commands 243
Voice instructions for navigation system 150
– muting 54
– repeating 54, 150
– switching on/off 54, 150
– volume 150
Voice phone book 193
Volume 160
– audio sources 160
– cargo bay 241
– fuel tank, refer to Capacities 242
– mobile phone 186
– setting speed-dependent 162
– voice instructions 150
– windshield cleaning system, refer to Capacities 242

W

Warning lamps, refer to Indicator and warning lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 80
Warning triangle 231
Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 220
Washer fluid 67
– capacity of the reservoir 68
Washer fluid reservoir 67
Waste container, refer to Ashtray 117
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 127
Waveband for radio 164
"WB" 161, 168
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 213
Weather news flashes 167
Website BMW 4
Weights 241
Wheel/tire combination, refer to New wheels and tires 214
Wheel/tire damage 213
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 239
Wheels and tires 208
Width, refer to Dimensions 239
Windows 40
– comfort operation 31
– comfort operation from outside 32
– comfort operation with comfort access 39
– rear window, Sports Wagon 35
– safety switch 41
Windshield
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 66
– defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows 109
– displays, refer to Head-Up Display 98
Windshield wash
– automatic, refer to Rain sensor 66
– capacities, reservoir 242
– rear window 67
– reservoir for washer fluid 217
– washer fluid 67
– windshield washer nozzles 67
– wiper system 66
Windshield wipers, refer to Wiper system 66
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– wiper blade replacement 222
Winter tires 214
– setting speed limit 82
– storage 215
Wiper blades
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– replacement 222
Wiper system 66
– rain sensor 66
– washer fluid 67
– windshield washer nozzles 67

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

"With highways" for navigation 145
Wood decoration, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Word matching principle for navigation 145
Working in the engine compartment 216
Wrenches/screwdrivers, refer to Onboard toolkit 222

X

xDrive 89
Xenon lamps 224
– replacing bulbs 224

Y

Your individual vehicle
– programmable buttons on steering wheel 53
– settings, refer to Personal Profile 29

Z

"Zoom" with BMW Night Vision 102

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Refueling

So that you will have important specifications available when you stop to refuel, we recommend that you supplement the following tables with data which apply to your vehicle. Consult the index for individual specifications.

Fuel

Quality

Please enter your preferred fuel here.

Engine oil

Preferred oil grade

Tire inflation pressure

	Summer tires Front	Rear	Winter tires Front	Rear
Up to 4 persons				
5 persons or 4 plus luggage				

BMW recommends Castrol

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

01 41 0 012 828 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 012 828 - © 08/06 BMW AG